As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 🕮 or ⚠⚠🕮 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ or ⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 106

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

System Updates Terms & Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

* Not available on all models

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application.
See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 41
For Safe Driving P. 42 Seat Belts P. 47 Airbags P. 60

Instrument Panel P. 107
Indicators P. 108 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 128

Controls P. 161
Clock P. 162 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 165
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 202
Interior Convenience Items P. 245

Features P. 273
Audio System P. 274 Display Audio* P. 276
Refuel Recommend* P. 374

Driving P. 375
Before Driving P. 376 Towing a Trailer P. 380 Off-road Guidelines P. 381
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 533 Refueling P. 535

Maintenance P. 541
Before Performing Maintenance P. 542
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 572
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 588 Cleaning P. 592

Handling the Unexpected P. 603
Tools P. 604 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 605
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 631 Overheating P. 632
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 652

Information P. 655
Specifications P. 656 Identification Numbers P. 660

Contents

Child Safety P. 71
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 105
Safety Labels P. 106

Tailgate P. 184
Security System P. 195
Windows P. 198
Mirrors P. 228
Seats P. 232
Climate Control System P. 264

Audio Error Messages* P. 363
General Information on the Audio System* P. 364

When Driving P. 383
Honda SENSING P. 430
Braking P. 510
Parking Your Vehicle P. 521
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 539

Maintenance Schedule P. 545
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 551
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 566
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 577
12-Volt Battery P. 583
Remote Transmitter Care P. 586
Accessories and Modifications P. 600

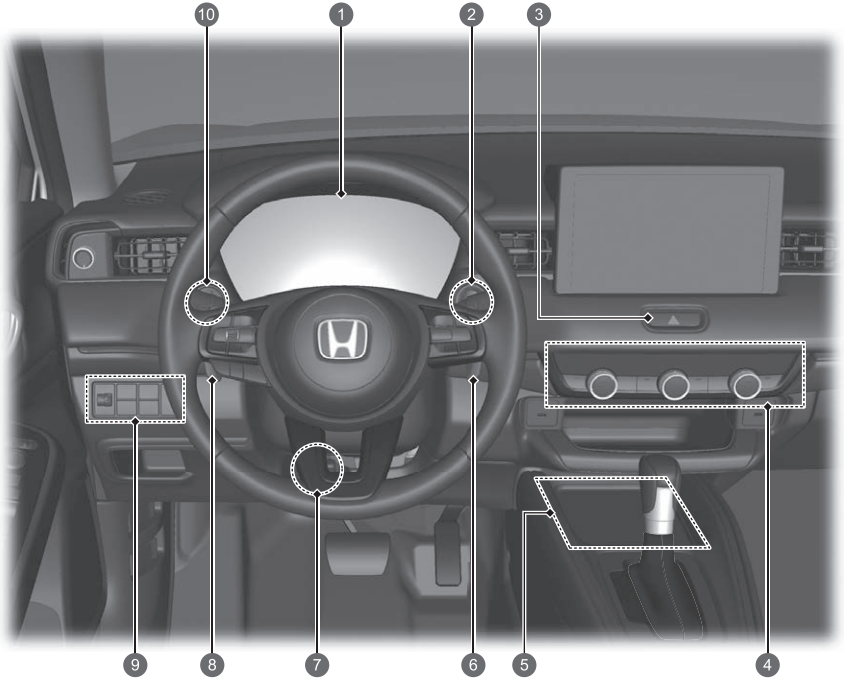
Handling of the Jack P. 620
Power System Won't Start P. 624
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 628
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 635
Fuses P. 643
Emergency Towing P. 651

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 661
Utility Compliance* P. 666
Open Source Licence* P. 667

Quick Reference Guide P. 6
Safe Driving P. 41
Instrument Panel P. 107
Controls P. 161
Features P. 273
Driving P. 375
Maintenance P. 541
Handling the Unexpected P. 603
Information P. 655
Index P. 668

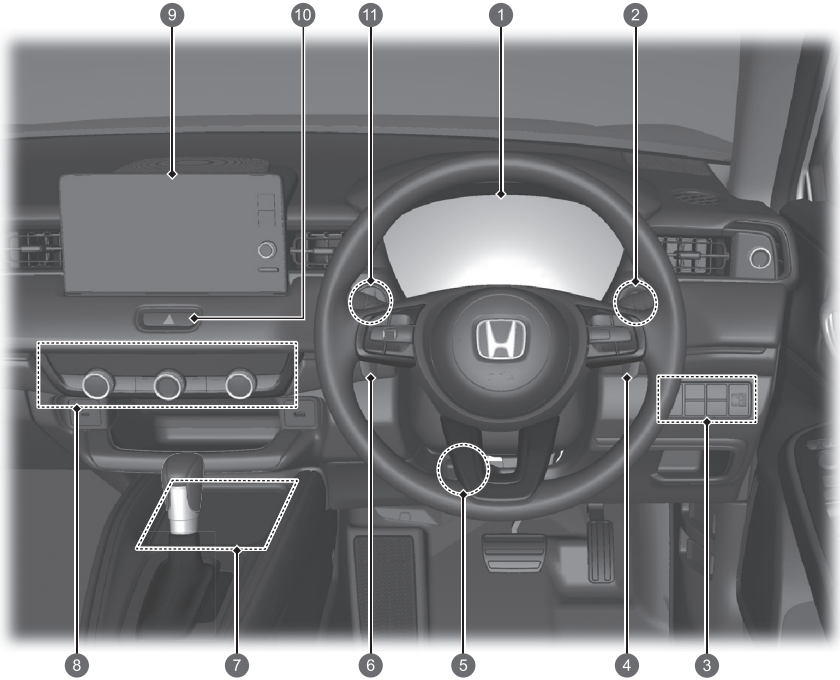
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



1. **System Indicators** P. 108
   Gauges P. 128
   Driver Information Interface P. 131
2. **POWER Button** P. 202
3. **Hazard Warning Button**
4. **Climate Control System** P. 264
   Rear Demister P. 225
5. **Wireless Charger*** P. 257
6. **Deceleration Paddle Selector (+)** P. 394
7. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 227
8. **Deceleration Paddle Selector (–)** P. 394
9. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 417
   Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button* P. 397
   Parking Sensor System Button P. 524
   Headlight Adjuster* P. 214
   Power Tailgate Button* P. 190
10. **Brightness Control** P. 226

Right-hand Drive Type



❶ **System Indicators** P. 108
Gauges P. 128
Driver Information Interface P. 131

❷ **POWER Button** P. 202

❸ **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 417
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button* P. 397
Parking Sensor System Button* P. 524
Headlight Adjuster* P. 214
Power Tailgate Button* P. 190

❹ **Deceleration Paddle Selector (+)** P. 394

❺ **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 227

❻ **Deceleration Paddle Selector (–)** P. 394

❼ **Wireless Charger*** P. 257

❽ **Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 261
Climate Control System P. 264
Rear Demister P. 225
Heated Door Mirror Button* P. 225

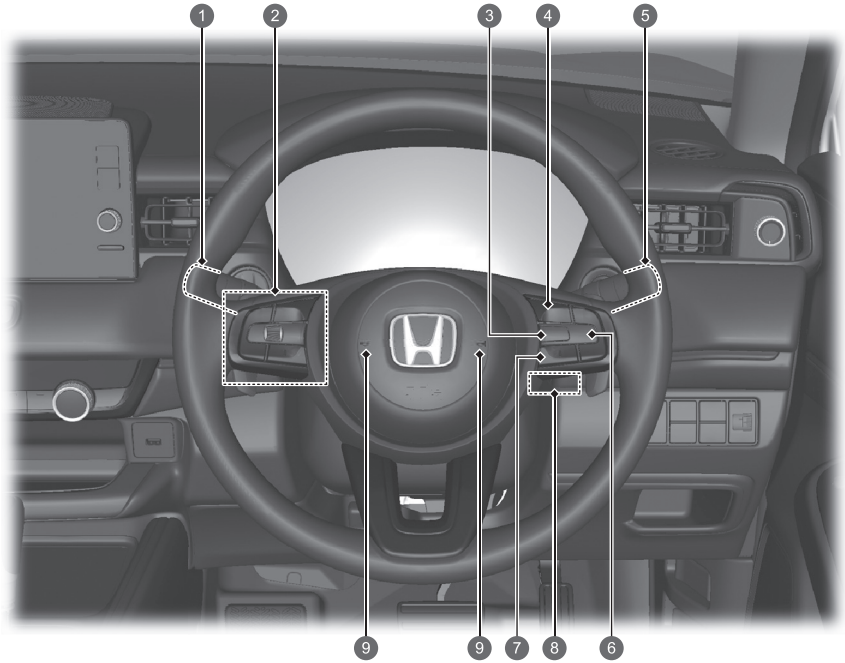
❾ **Audio System*** P. 274
Navigation System*
See the Navigation System Manual

❿ **Hazard Warning Button**

⓫ **Brightness Control** P. 226

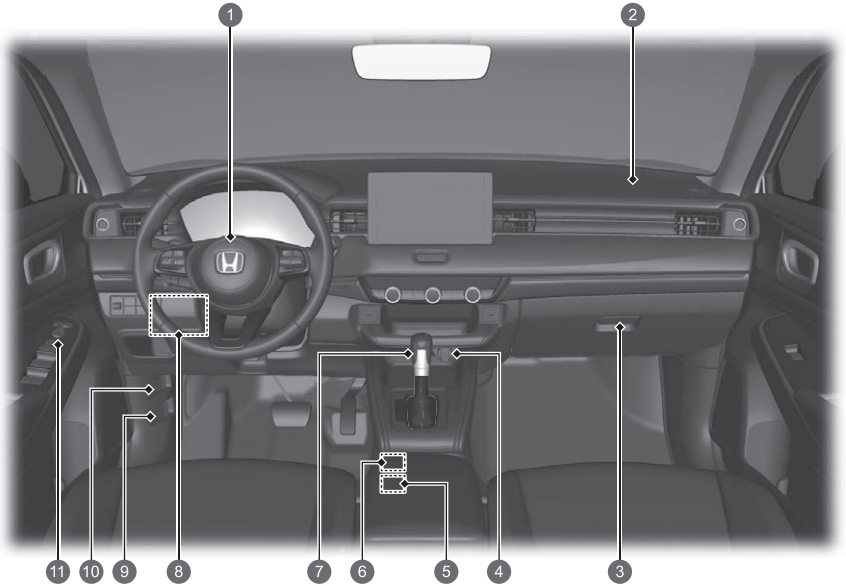
* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. **Wipers/Washers*** P. 222
   Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 205, 207
   Front Fog Lights* P. 209
   Rear Fog Light* P. 209
2. **(Home) Button** P. 132, 280
   Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons* P. 344
   Left Selector Wheel P. 132, 280
   Audio Remote Controls* P. 280
3. **Button** P. 403, 410, 462
4. **LIM Button*** P. 403, 410, 462
5. **Headlights/Turn Signals*** P. 205, 207
   Front Fog Lights* P. 209
   Wipers/Washers* P. 222
6. **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons** P. 461
7. **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** P. 481
   Interval Button P. 473
8. **Heated Steering Wheel Button*** P. 260
9. **Horn (Press an area around .)**

Left-hand Drive Type

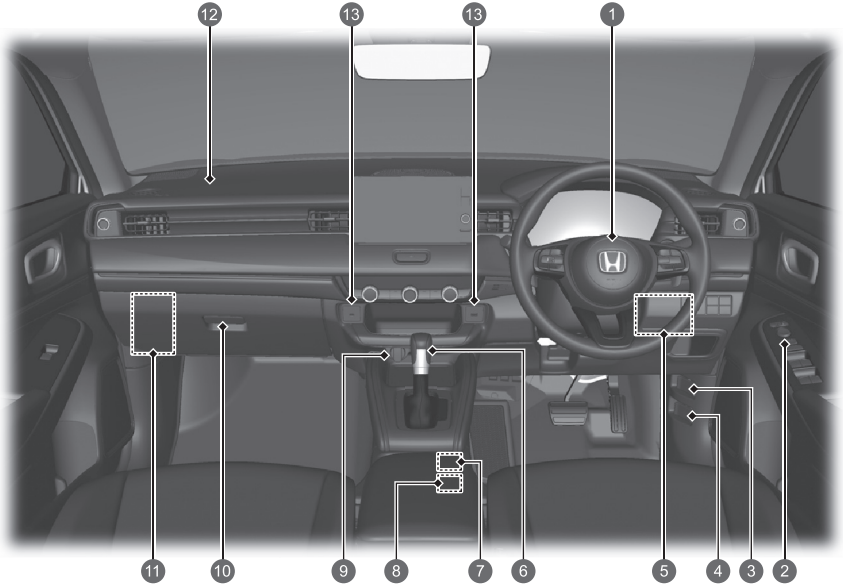


1. **Driver's Front Airbag** P. 62
2. **Passenger's Front Airbag** P. 62
3. **Glove Box** P. 248
4. **Accessory Power Socket** P. 256
5. **Electric Parking Brake Switch** P. 510
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 514
6. **Drive Mode Switch** P. 398
   Hill Descent Control Button P. 402
7. **Shift Lever** P. 392
8. **Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box** P. 645
9. **Bonnet Release Handle** P. 552
10. **Fuel Fill Door Release Handle** P. 537
11. **Door Mirror Controls** P. 229
    Master Door Lock Switch P. 181
    Power Window Switches P. 199

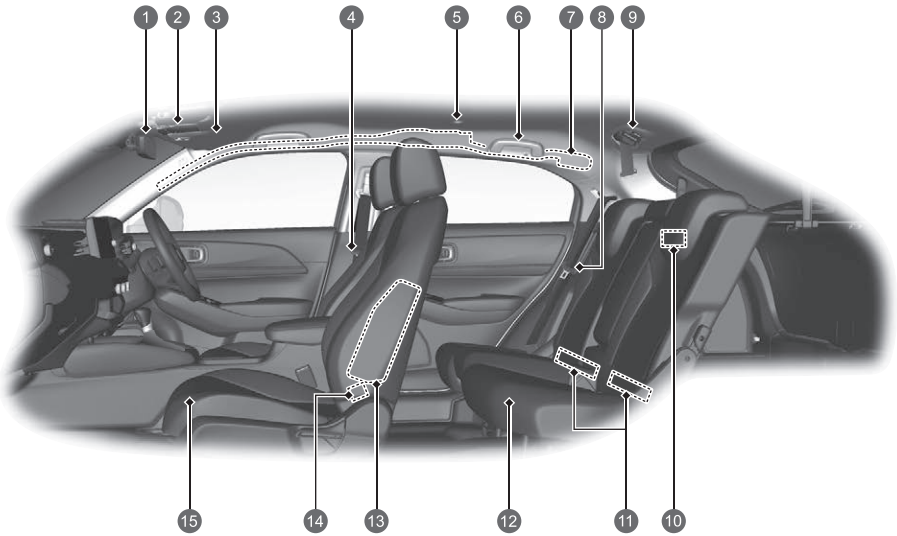
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



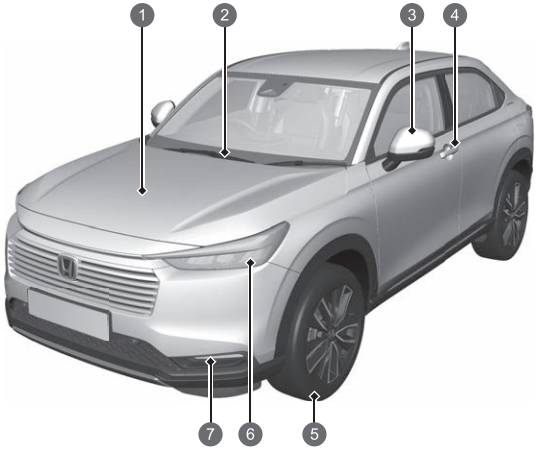
1. Driver's Front Airbag P. 62
2. Door Mirror Controls P. 229
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 181
   Power Window Switches P. 199
3. Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 537
4. Bonnet Release Handle P. 552
5. Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 645
6. Shift Lever P. 392
7. Drive Mode Switch P. 398
   Hill Descent Control Button P. 402
8. Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 510
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 514
9. Accessory Power Socket P. 256
10. Glove Box P. 248
11. Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 649
12. Passenger's Front Airbag P. 62
13. USB Ports* P. 279



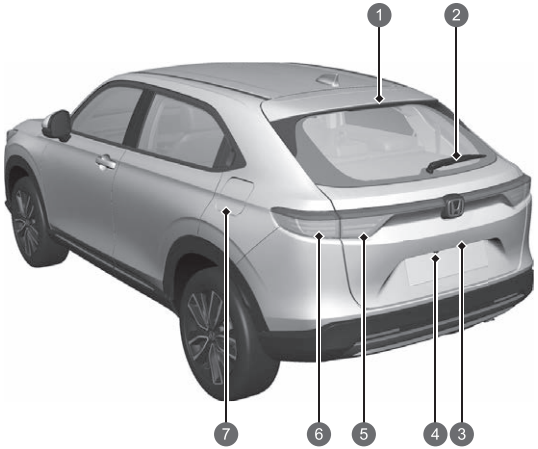
❶ **Rearview Mirror** P. 228
❷ **Map Lights** P. 245
❸ **Sun Visors** P. 255
Vanity Mirrors
❹ **Seat Belts** P. 47
❺ **Map Lights** P. 246
❻ **Grab Handle**
Coat Hook P. 250
❼ **Side Curtain Airbags*** P. 67
❽ **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 98
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 100
❾ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*** P. 55
❿ **Luggage Area Light** P. 247
⓫ **Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems** P. 94
⓬ **Rear Seat** P. 236
⓭ **Side Airbags** P. 65
⓮ **USB Ports*** P. 275
⓯ **Front Seat** P. 232

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 551
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 222, 572
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 229
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 207, 566
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 168
5. Tyres P. 577, 605
6. Headlights P. 205, 566
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 205, 211, 566
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 207, 566
7. Front Fog Lights* P. 209, 566



1. High-Mount Brake Light P. 570
2. Rear Wiper P. 224, 575
3. Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 184
   Tailgate Outer Handle P. 185
   Rear Licence Plate Light P. 205, 570
4. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 533
5. Taillights P. 205, 569, 570
   Rear Fog Light* P. 209, 569
   Back-Up Lights P. 569, 570
6. Brake/Taillights P. 205, 567, 570
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 207, 567, 570
7. How to Refuel P. 537

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

- **Energy efficiency**
  As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine.
  In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

- **Battery types**
  There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

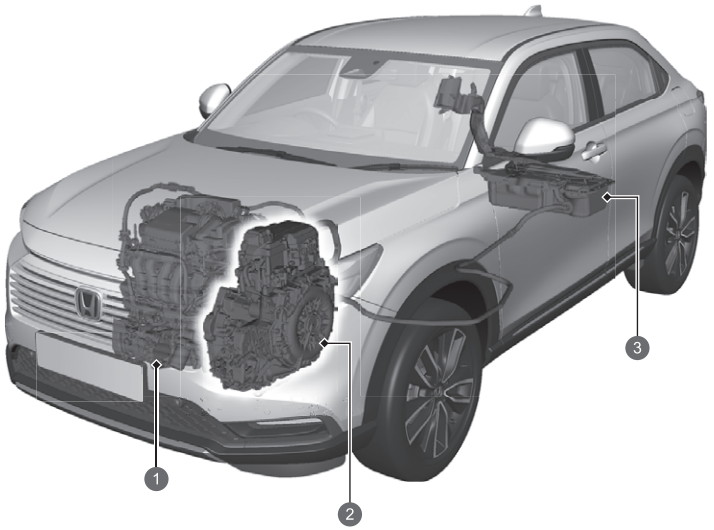
e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Runs the generator and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

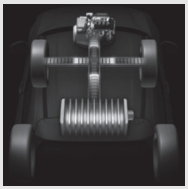
Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.
Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you to get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle. P. 429

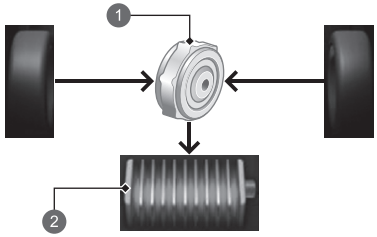


1 Petrol Engine
2 Generator & Electric Motor
3 High Voltage Battery

Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: • Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): • The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. • The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: • The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. • The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

● **Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking**

When regenerative braking is in operation



1 Motor
2 High Voltage Battery

When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

● **Auto Engine Stop/Start**

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

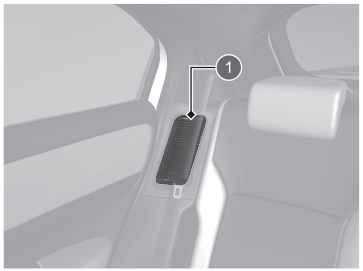
- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.
- The High Voltage battery is too low on charge.

● **Sounds Unique to the e:HEV**

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Safety Precautions

Do not cover the air intake



1 Air Intake

If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

● Be careful of electric shock hazard.

▶If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

● Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

▶The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

● Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

▶Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

● Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

● The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

Safe Driving P. 41

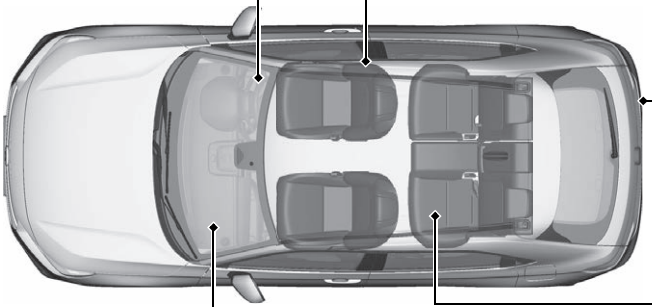
Before Driving Checklist P. 46

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts P. 47

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 105

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety P. 71

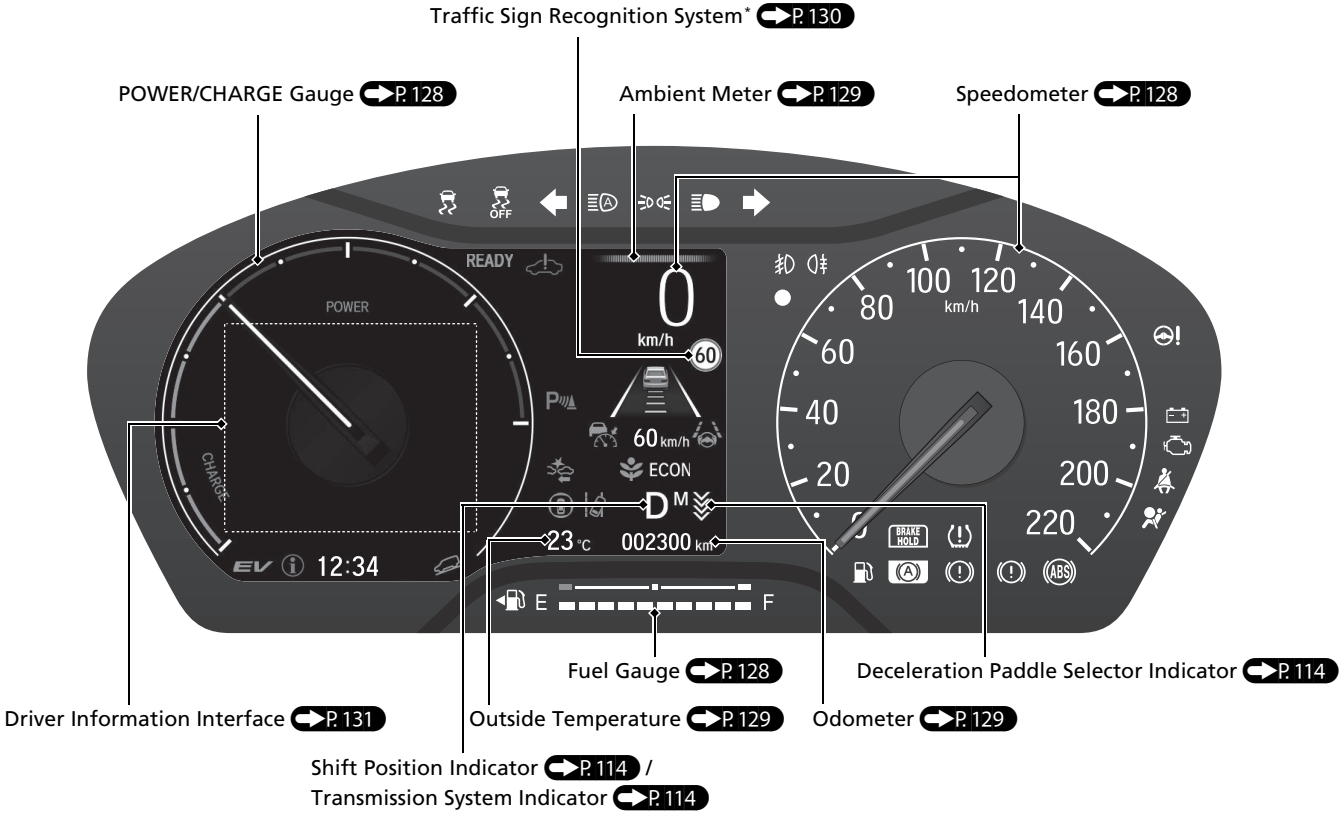
- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags P. 60

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Instrument Panel P. 107

Indicators P. 108/Gauges P. 128/Driver Information Interface P. 131



* Not available on all models

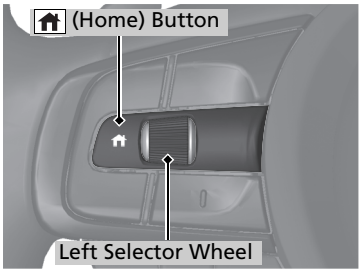
Controls P. 161

Clock P. 162

Singaporean and Oceanian models

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.
P. 290

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models



1. Press the (Home) button.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then press the left selector wheel.
4. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Adjustment**, then press the left selector wheel.
5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

POWER Button P. 202

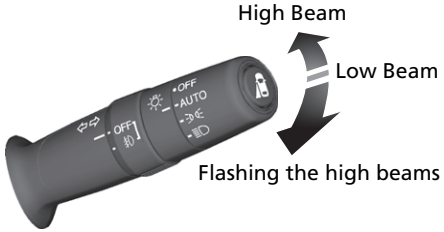
Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

Turn Signals P. 207

Turn Signal Control Lever

Lights P. 205

Light Control Switches

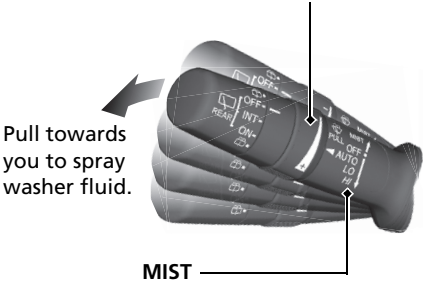


Wipers and Washers

P. 222

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Lower speed, fewer sweeps*1
−: Low sensitivity*2
+: Higher speed, more sweeps*1
+: High sensitivity*2



MIST
OFF
INT*1: Low speed with intermittent
AUTO*2: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

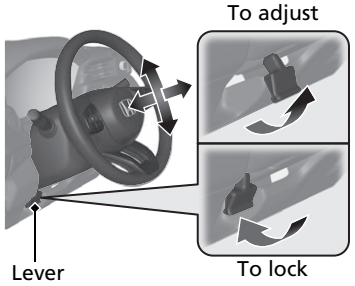
*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

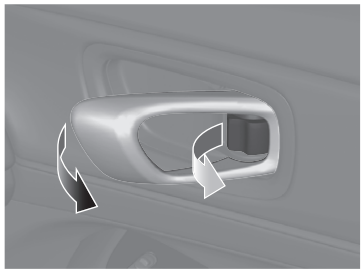
Steering Wheel P. 227

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* from the Inside P. 180

- Pull the driver's door and front passenger's door* inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

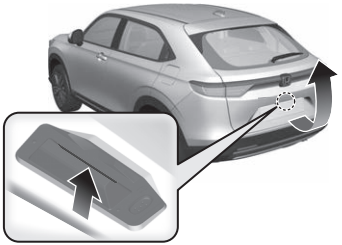


Tailgate P. 184

- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.

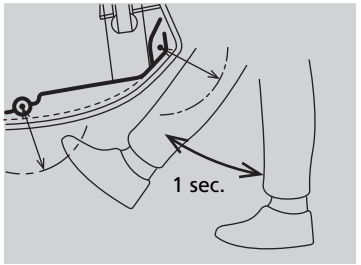
Models with power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.



Models with power tailgate

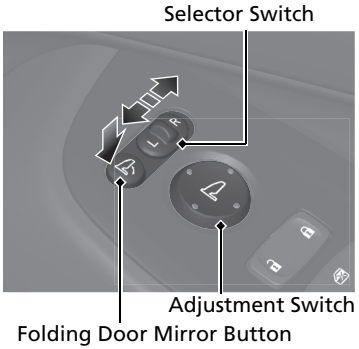
With the keyless remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.



Power Door Mirrors

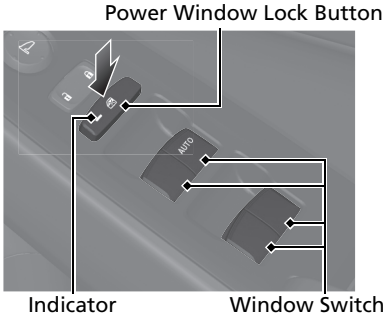
P. 229

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows P. 198

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

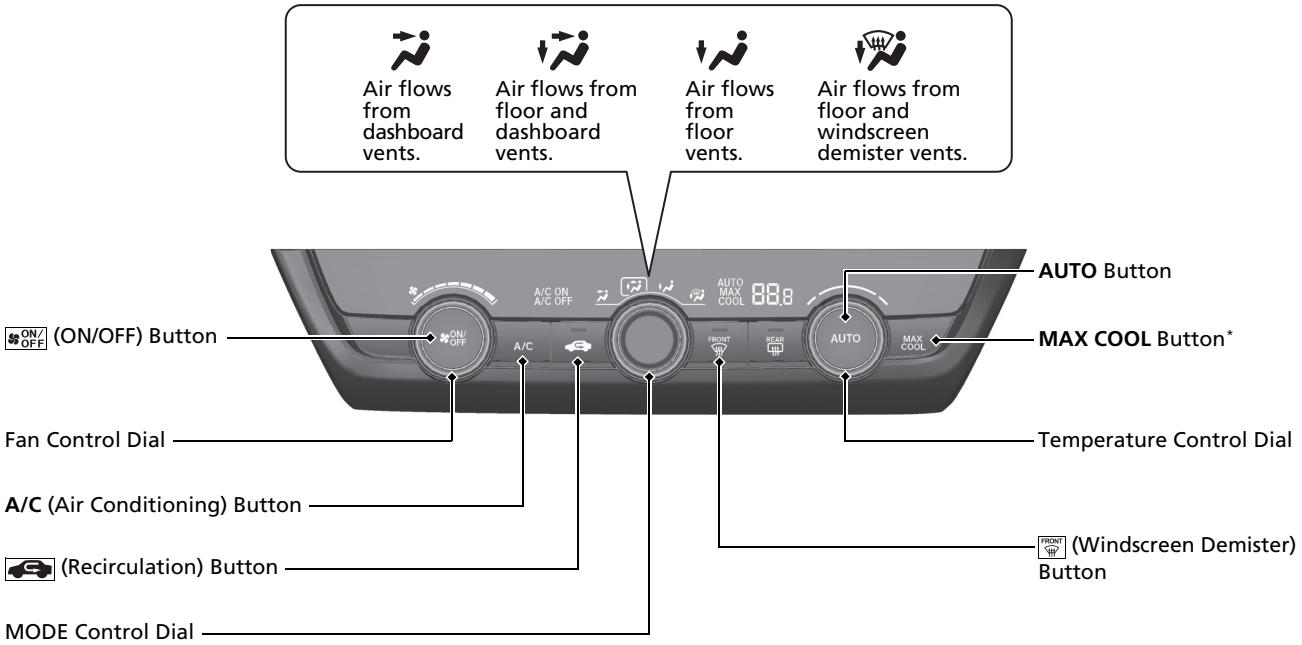


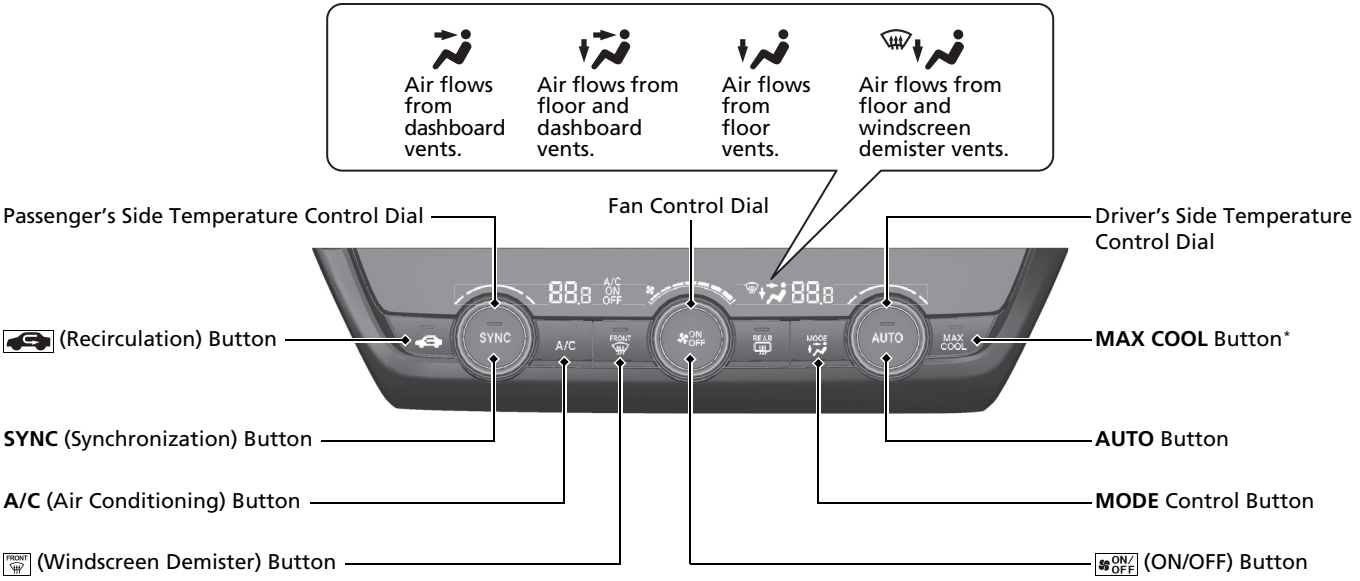
* Not available on all models

Climate Control System P. 264

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Models without SYNC button



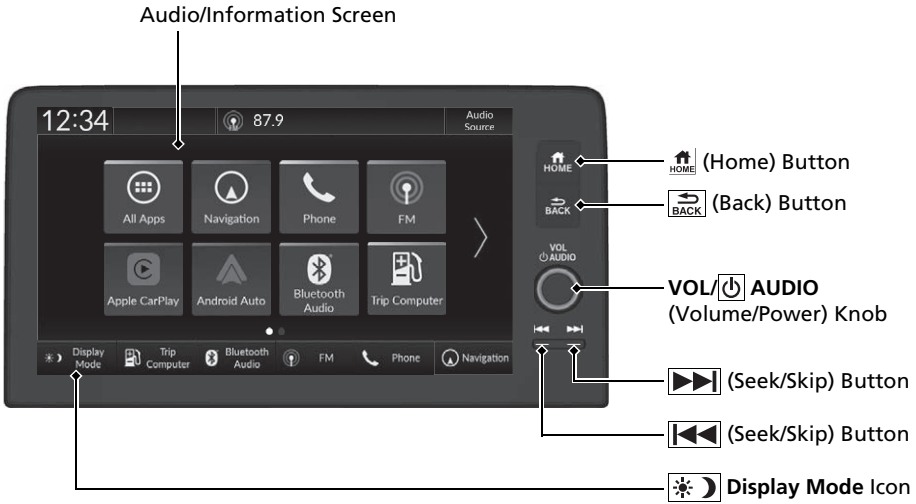


* Not available on all models

Features P. 273

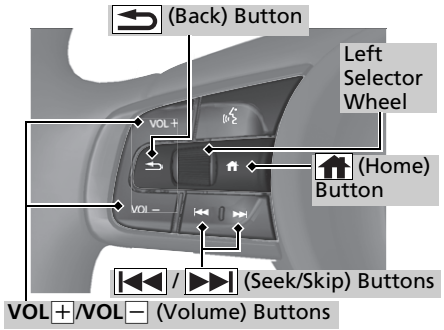
Audio System* P. 274, 276

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



Audio Remote Controls*

P. 280



- **VOL+/VOL–** (Volume) Buttons
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode
  Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  FM/AM/DAB*/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio

  Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio: Press / to change the preset radio station.
  iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:
  Press / to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Radio: Press and hold / to change the strong station.
  USB device:
  Press and hold / to change a folder.
  iPod: Press and hold / to change a song.

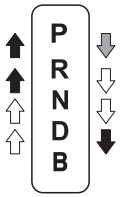
  Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

Driving P. 375

Transmission P. 391, 392

● Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

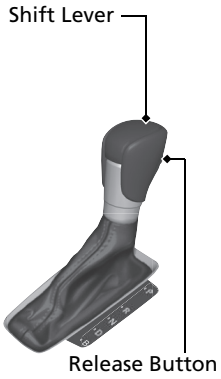
Shift selection



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



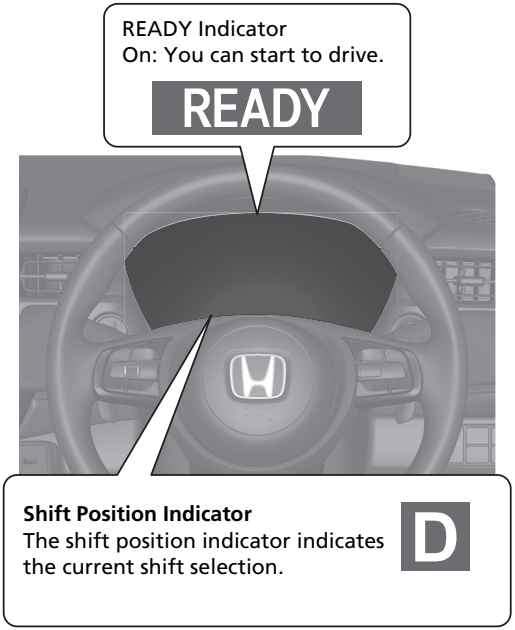
P **Park**
Used when parking or before turning the power on or off.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is on.

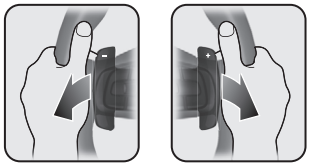
B **Drive (B)**
- Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.



Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 394

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

- **When shift position is in D**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will increase temporarily, and the stage will appear on the gauge.
- **When shift position is in D and SPORT mode is ON or when shift position is in B**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear on the gauge.



− Paddle Selector

+ Paddle Selector

When shift position is in D, the deceleration stage appears.

When shift position is in D and **SPORT** mode is ON or when shift position is in B, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.

Deceleration stage

CMBS On and Off P. 437

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.

To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 417

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 419

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Except Taiwanese models

Deflation Warning System* P. 422

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Adjustable Speed Limiter* P. 403

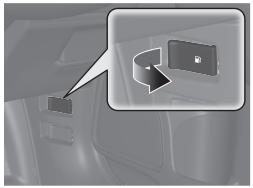
This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **SET/–** or the **RES/+** button when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h to 250 km/h.

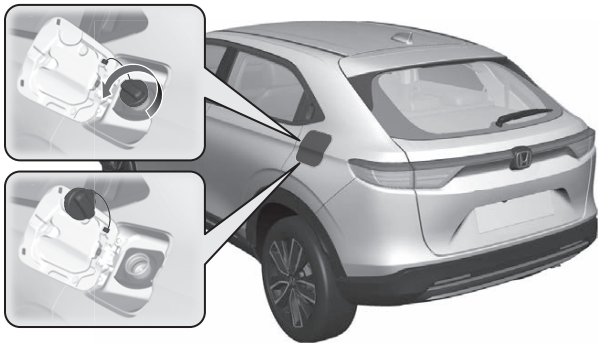
Refueling P. 535

Fuel recommendation:	Except Thai, Taiwanese, and Pakistani models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher** Thai models **Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher** Taiwanese models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher** Pakistani models **EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher**
Fuel tank capacity:	**40 L**

1. Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

* Not available on all models

Honda SENSING P. 430

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 433

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Low Speed Braking Control* P. 447

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through Low Speed Brake function and/or Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 453

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 461

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 478

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Traffic Jam Assist P. 488

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

P. 497

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 502

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Auto High-Beam* P. 215

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

P. 218

When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation. In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

Blind Spot Information System* P. 424

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

P. 529

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.
The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Parking Sensor System*

P. 523

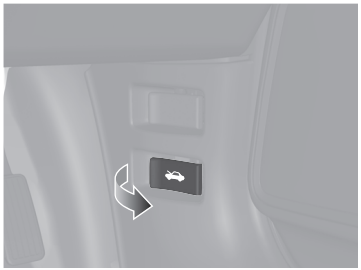
The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance P. 541

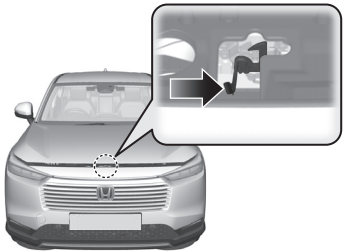
Under the Bonnet P. 551

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check high voltage system coolant and brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



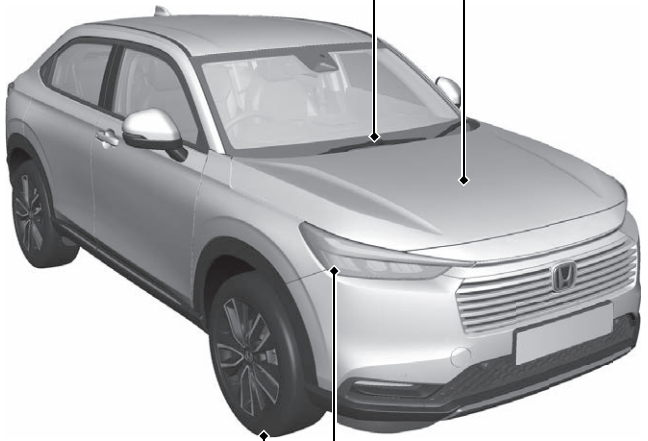
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 572

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres P. 577

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 566

- Inspect all lights regularly.

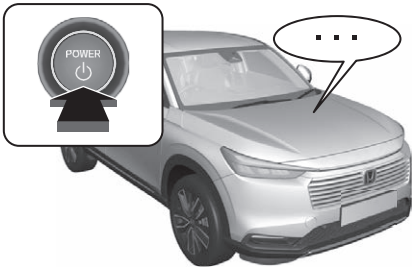
Handling the Unexpected P. 603

Flat Tyre P. 605

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

Power System Won't Start P. 624

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.

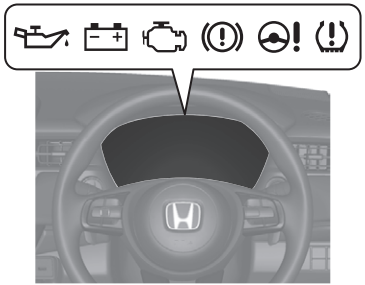


Overheating P. 632

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.

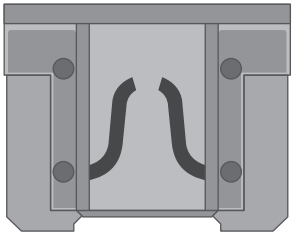
Indicators Come On P. 635

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 643

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 651

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **POWER** button.

Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.

Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 171

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Models with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*/Deflation Warning System*

I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*/Deflation Warning System* needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➔ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 419
➔ Deflation Warning System* P. 422

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q Pakistani models

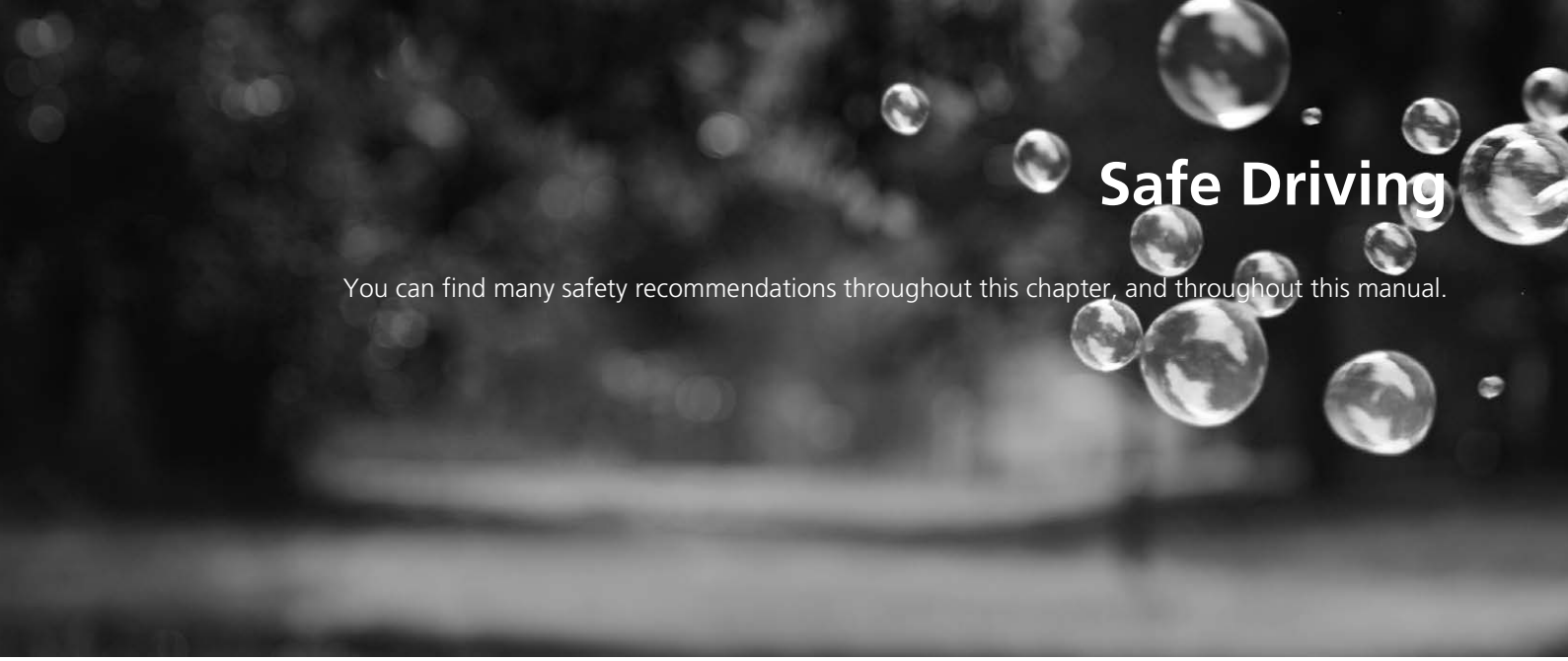
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Pump Octane Number (PON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Q Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of low regular unleaded petrol can lead to engine damage.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 42
- Important Handling Information 44
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 45
- Safety Checklist 46

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 47
- Fastening a Seat Belt 52
- Seat Belt Inspection 58
- Anchorage Points 59

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 60
- Types of Airbags 62
- Front Airbags (SRS) 62
- Side Airbags 65
- Side Curtain Airbags* 67
- Airbag System Indicators 69
- Airbag Care 70

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 71
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 75
- Safety of Larger Children 102

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 105

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 106

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or rollover if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

Important Handling Information

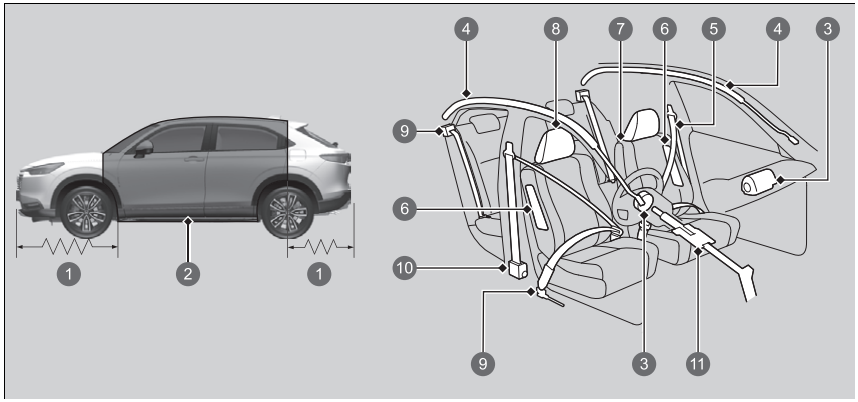
For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle P. 389
Off-road Guidelines P. 381

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Crush Zones
❷ Safety Cage
❸ Front Airbags
❹ Side Curtain Airbags*
❺ Seat Belts
❻ Side Airbags
❼ Seats and Seat-Backs
❽ Head Restraints
❾ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners*
❿ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners
⓫ Collapsible Steering Column

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

* Not available on all models

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer* seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

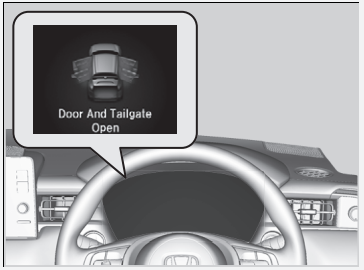
Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 232
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 241
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 52
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 71

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four*1 or five*2 seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Child Safety** P. 71

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

*1: Oceanian models
*2: Except Oceanian models

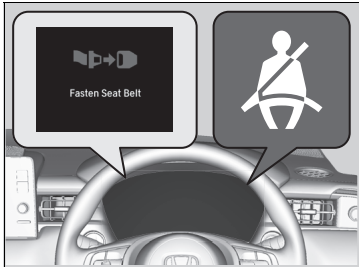
About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

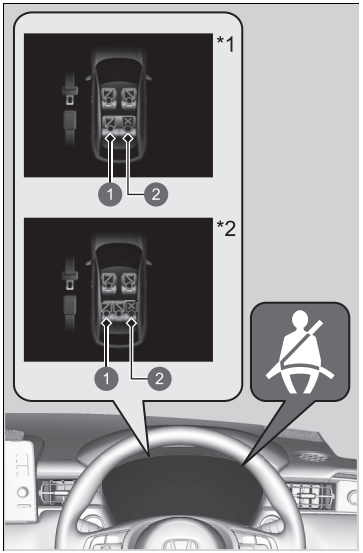
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ **Rear seats**

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

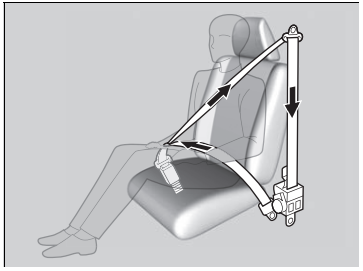
The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts has been unfastened while driving.

*1: Oceanian models
*2: Except Oceanian models

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



Oceanian and Singaporean models

Driver seat

The front seats and the outer rear seats* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

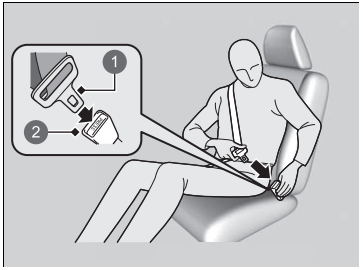
* Not available on all models

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

Seats P. 232

1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

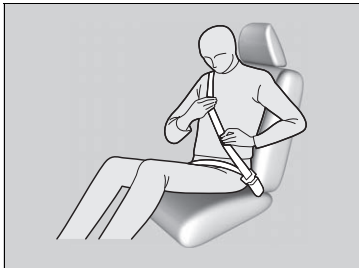
Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

About Your Seat Belts P. 47
Seat Belt Inspection P. 58



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.

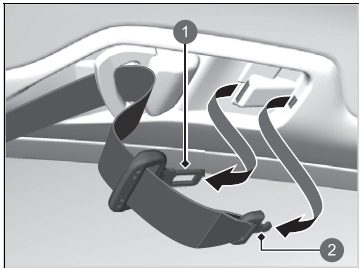
1. Move the anchorage up and down while pulling the shoulder anchorage outward.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

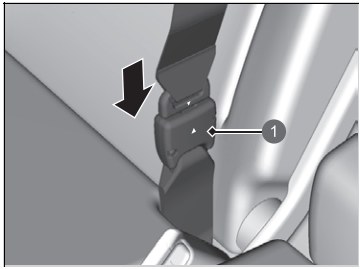
The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*



1. Latch Plate
2. Small Latch Plate

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



1. Anchorage Buckle

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle.
Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

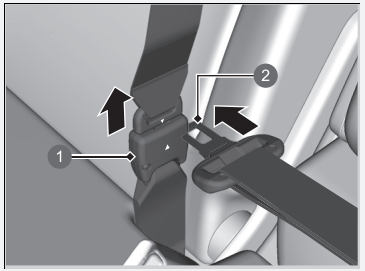
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

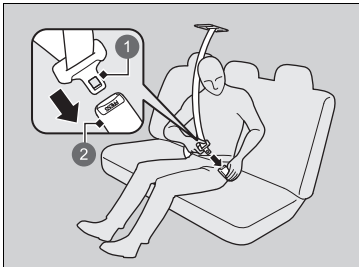
To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



1. Anchorage Buckle
2. Latch Plate

* Not available on all models

Continued



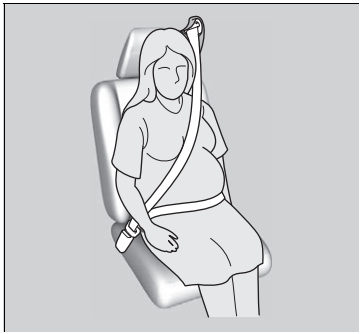
1 Latch Plate
2 Buckle

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

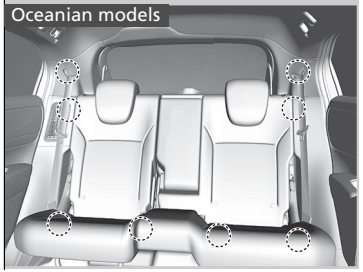
Anchorage Points

Front Seat

When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images.
The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

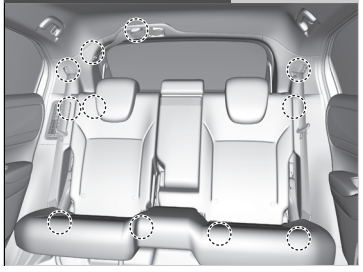
Rear Seat

Oceanian models



The rear seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

Except Oceanian models



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing Sensor

* Not available on all models

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with two or three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

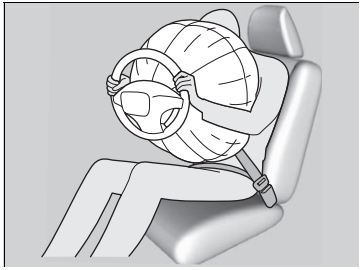
* Not available on all models

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

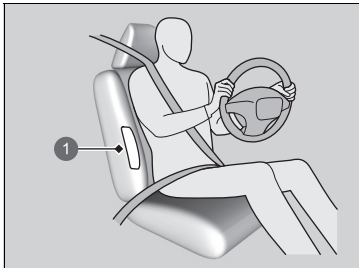
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

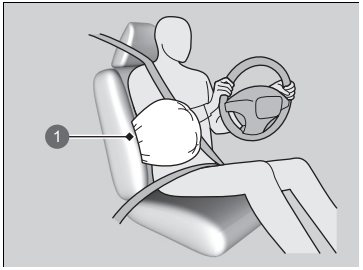
❶ Side Airbag Location

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Continued

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

1 Deployed Side Airbag

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Airbags

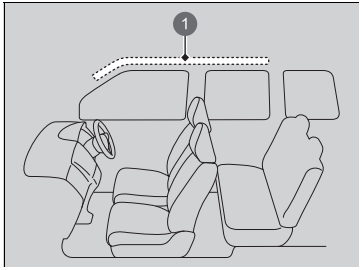
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passenger*1 or passengers in outer seating positions*2 during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location

Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

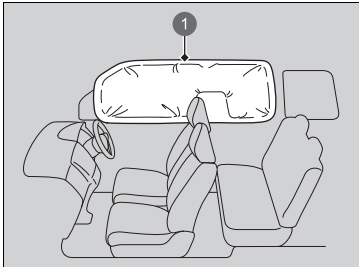
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

*1: Oceanian models
*2: Except Oceanian models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

❶ Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
❷ Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

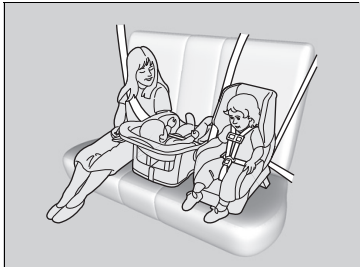
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

* Not available on all models

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

Except Taiwanese models

⚠WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Taiwanese models

Continued

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➡ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 77

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

Malaysian models

⚠WARNING

Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows P. 198

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Continued

Protecting Child Passengers

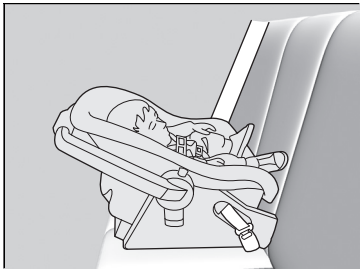
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 106

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

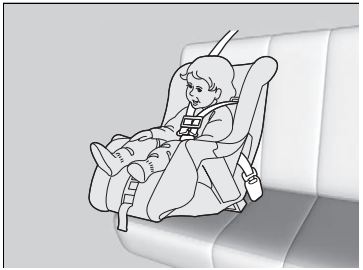
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Continued

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

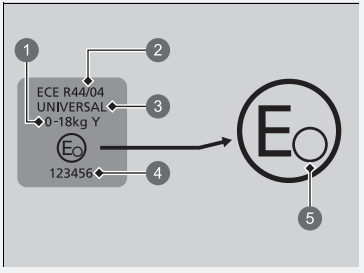
Continued

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

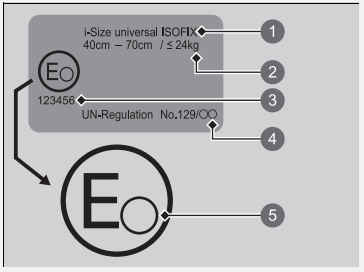
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



❶ Category
❷ Size and weight indication
❸ Approval number
❹ Regulation number
❺ Country code

Continued

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Oceanian models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision. Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Oceanian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	—		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Continued

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

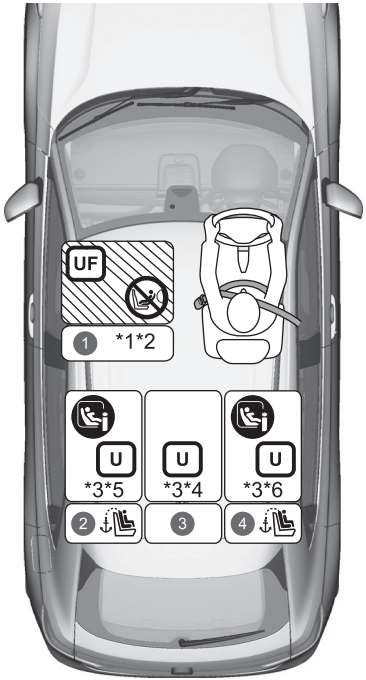
*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Latin American, Indonesian, Malaysian, and Thai models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Continued

Latin American, Indonesian, Malaysian, and Thai models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger[*1]	2nd row[*3]		
				Left[*5]	Centre[*4]	Right[*6]
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes[*2]	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS[*7]	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

*1: • Forward facing only.
• Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
• If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
• If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

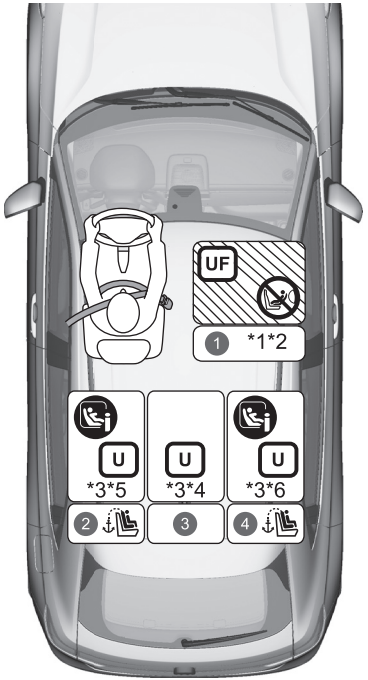
*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Vietnamese, Cambodian, Laotian, and Filipino models



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise it to the top.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Vietnamese, Cambodian, Laotian, and Filipino models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger*1	2nd row*3		
				Left*5	Centre*4	Right*6
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*7	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

Continued

*1:
- Forward facing only.
- Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
  Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
- If you cannot fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*3: If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Latin American models

■ Latin Genuine CRS List

INMETRO466

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9 to 18kg	Honda Baby & Kids	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15 to 36kg	—	—

Malaysian, Thai, Vietnamese, Cambodian, Laotian, and Indonesian models

■ Malaysian, Cambodia, Thailand Genuine CRS List

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Continued

South African models

■ South africa Genuine CRS List

UN R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	STANDARD	Universal (Rearward facing)
Group I 9kg to 18kg	STANDARD	Universal (Forward facing)
Group II, III 15kg to 36kg	—	—

UN R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71cm and 15 months to 100cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Taiwanese models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.
	Never use a child restraint system.

*1: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used.

Child restraint systems with support legs cannot be installed on centre seat.

*2: Attaching a belt-mounted child restraint system to the rear outer seating position may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*3: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear side, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

Continued

Taiwanese models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number		
			❶	❷	❸
			2nd row		
			Left	Centre*1	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes*2
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes*2
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		Yes*3	No	Yes*3
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*4	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes*3	No	Yes*3
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	R3*3	No	R3*3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	F3*3	No	F3*3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		B3*2*3	B3	B3*2*3

*1: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side cannot be used. Child restraint systems with support legs cannot be installed on centre seat.
*2: Attaching a belt-mounted child restraint system to the rear outer seating position may make the centre seat belt unusable.
*3: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear side, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
*4: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

Taiwanese models

Taiwan Genuine CRS List

CNS11497

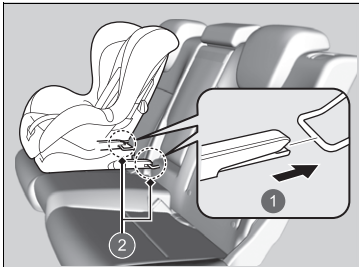
Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Group I 9kg to 18kg	Joie Arc360 (C1416)	Semi-universal ISOFIX
Group II, III 15kg to 36kg	Honda KIDFIX	Universal Semi-universal

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).

❶ Marks

1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.



❶ Rigid Type
❷ Lower Anchorages

2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

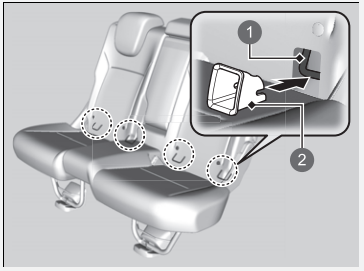
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

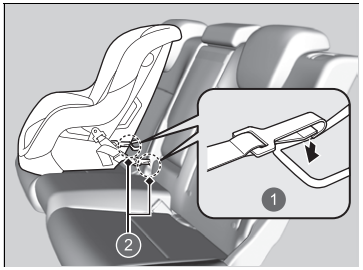
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

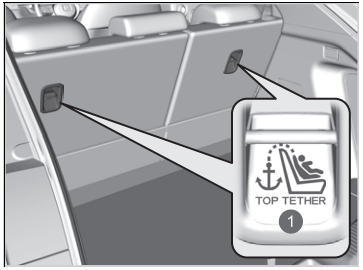
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup



❶ Flexible Type
❷ Lower Anchorages



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

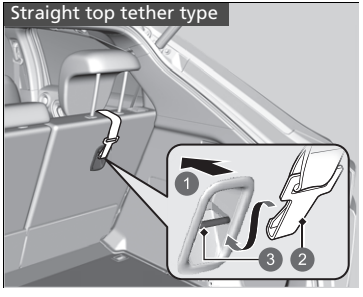
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

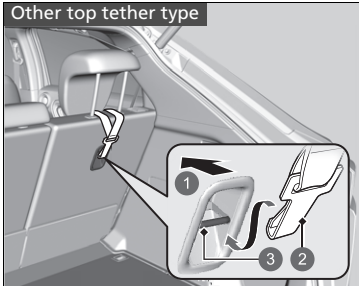
Continued

Straight top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Other top tether type

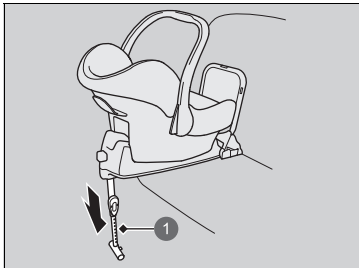


❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Child restraint system with tether strap

3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Remove the luggage area cover*.
➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 253
4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

* Not available on all models



❶ Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

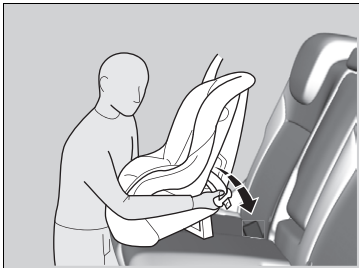
3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

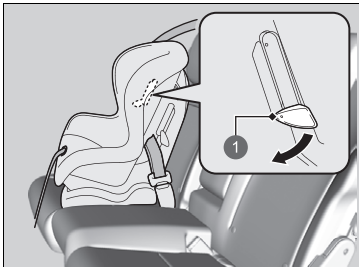
▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.

▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





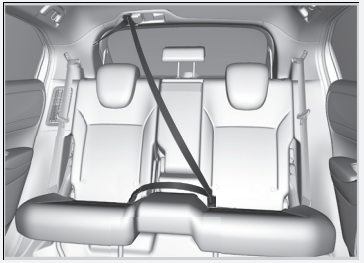
❶ Tab

1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

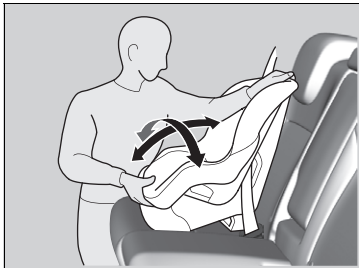
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

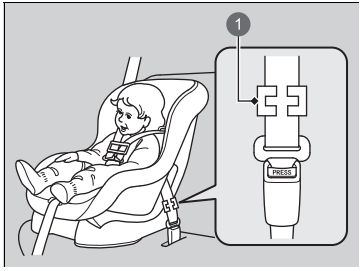


Except Oceanian models

If a Child Restraint System is installed in one of the outer seats, it may cover the centre seat belt buckle or anchorage buckle.
Before installing a Child Restraint System, make sure the centre seat belt is fastened.
For additional information on fastening seat belts see
➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 52



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



❶ Locking Clip

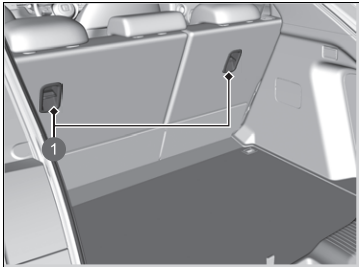
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

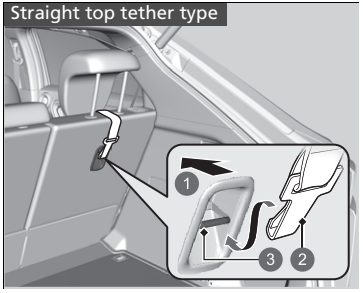
Continued

■ Adding Security with a Tether



❶ Tether Anchorage Points

Straight top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

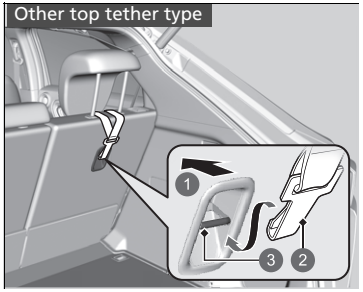
1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
   ▶ Remove the luggage area cover*.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 253
2. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
   Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
5. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
6. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

* Not available on all models



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

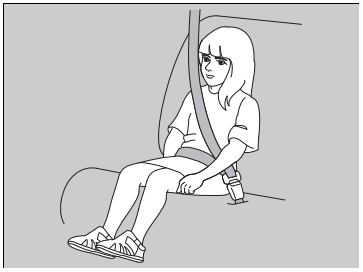
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

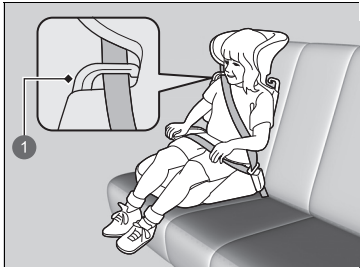
⚠WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

❶ Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

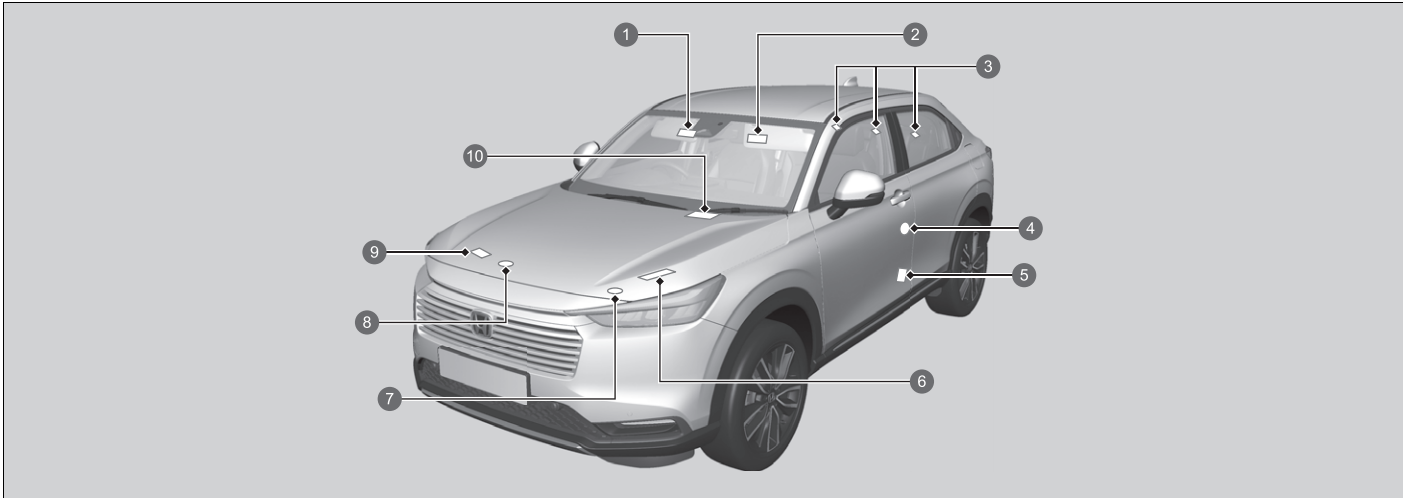
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 71
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 71
3. Rear Head Restraints* ➔ P. 242
4. Protecting Child Passenger* ➔ P. 73
5. Information for Painting* ➔ P. 599
6. 12-volt battery*
7. High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap* ➔ P. 562
8. Radiator Cap* ➔ P. 560
9. Air Conditioner* ➔ P. 588
10. Wireless Charger* ➔ P. 259

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 108
Gauges and Driver Information Interface
Gauges 128
Driver Information Interface 131

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P. 110
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P. 112
*1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P. 112
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→P. 112
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→P. 113
*1, *2	Power System Indicator*2	→P. 113
POWER SYSTEM *1, *3	**POWER SYSTEM** Indicator*3	

READY	**READY** Indicator	→P. 113
*1	**EV** Indicator	→P. 113
*1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→P. 114
	Shift Position Indicator	→P. 114
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→P. 114
	Transmission System Indicator	→P. 114
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→P. 115
	Low Fuel Indicator	→P. 115

*1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→P. 115
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→P. 115
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→P. 116
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→P. 116
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P. 116
*1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator*4	→P. 117
	Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator*5	→P. 118

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.
*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*3: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*4: Oceanian models
*5: Taiwanese models

	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→P. 119
	Lights On Indicator	→P. 119
	High Beam Indicator	→P. 119
*1	Auto High-Beam*/ Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator	→P. 119
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→P. 119
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→P. 119
	ECON Mode Indicator	→P. 120
	SPORT Mode Indicator	→P. 120
	NORMAL Mode Indicator	→P. 120
	System Message Indicator	→P. 121
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	→P. 121

*1	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 121
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	→P. 122
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	→P. 122
○	Security System Alarm Indicator	→P. 120
○	Immobilizer System Indicator	→P. 120
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	→P. 122
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)	→P. 122

*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→P. 123
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 123
*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	→P. 124
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	→P. 124
*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	→P. 124
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	→P. 124
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	→P. 124
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→P. 125
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→P. 127

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

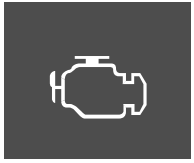
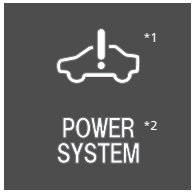
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 638

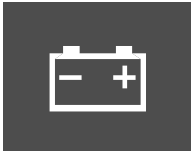
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 638 • **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 640 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 640

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 514
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 514

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems or electric vehicle system. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 637
	Power System Indicator*1 **POWER SYSTEM** Indicator*2	• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. • **Stop Driving When Safe***1**/Do Not Drive***2 displays on the driver information interface - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
	READY Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 383
	EV Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.	—

*1:Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2:Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➡ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 583 ➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 636
	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➡ **Shifting** P. 392
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. • Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. • Comes on with **M** when **SPORT** mode is selected or the shift position is in B, and the paddle selector is pulled.	➡ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 394
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system* - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

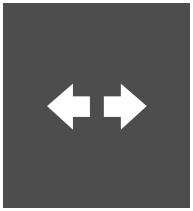
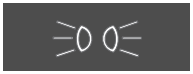
* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, agile handling assist or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 416 ➡ **Hill start assist system** P. 388 ➡ **Agile Handling Assist** P. 418
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 417
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 639

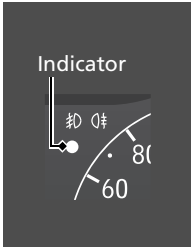
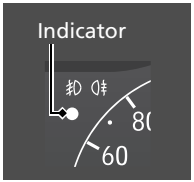
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Oceanian models Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been initialised.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be initialised. ➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 422
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

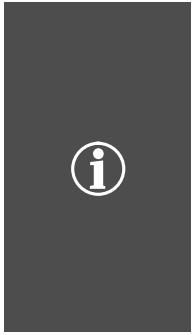
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Taiwanese models Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 419
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 566, 567
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 520
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Lights** P. 205
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. • Comes on when the adaptive driving beam* is active.	➡ **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 218
	Auto High-Beam*/ Adaptive Driving Beam* Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam*/adaptive driving beam* are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam*** P. 215 ➡ **Adaptive Driving Beam*** P. 218
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	➡ **Fog Lights*** P. 209
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	➡ **Fog Lights*** P. 209

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm** P. 196
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**.	**Drive Mode Switch** P. 398
	SPORT Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**.	• The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. **Drive Mode Switch** P. 398
	NORMAL Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **NORMAL**.	**Drive Mode Switch** P. 398

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the [home] (home) button, and select **Information*/Warnings*** to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 131 • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the [home] (home) button is pressed.
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	• Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.	➡ **Parking Sensor System*** P. 523
	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when the Hill Descent Control System is on and ready to use. • Lights up in green when the Hill Descent Control System is in operation.	➡ **Hill Descent Control System** P. 401

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 379 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. Oceanian models You can switch between indicators by pressing the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 461
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*		➡ **Adjustable Speed Limiter*** P. 403
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*		➡ **Intelligent Speed Limiter*** P. 409

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 379 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 478 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 488

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 125
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	➔ **Safety Support** P. 143
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 125
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 453
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➔ **Safety Support** P. 143

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, or blind spot information system*.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 379 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and Low Speed Braking Control* are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	Models with Low Speed Braking Control • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the sonar sensor.	• Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of the sonar sensor. ➔ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 447
		Models with blind spot information system • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. • Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. • The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ➔ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 424
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	• Lights up in green when Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, and blind spot information system* are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 453 ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 433 ➔ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 447 ➔ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 424

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E* or 0*.
Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

■ POWER/CHARGE Gauge

■ Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

■ Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

* Not available on all models

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Ambient Meter

Models without G-Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner with the **SPORT** mode off.

All models

Changes to red to indicate that **SPORT** mode is selected.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Clock

Shows the clock.
You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➲ **Clock Setup** P. 290

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*.

➲ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 461
➲ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 478
➲ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 488

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.
If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the detected traffic sign is exceeded.

➲ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 502

 * Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low**, **Engine Temperature Too Hot** or **Limited Stopping Power**[*1]/**Reduced Stopping Power**[*2] message is displayed.

- **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 635
- **Overheating** P. 632
- **If the Limited Stopping Power*1/Reduced Stopping Power*2 Warning Appears** P. 636

■ Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

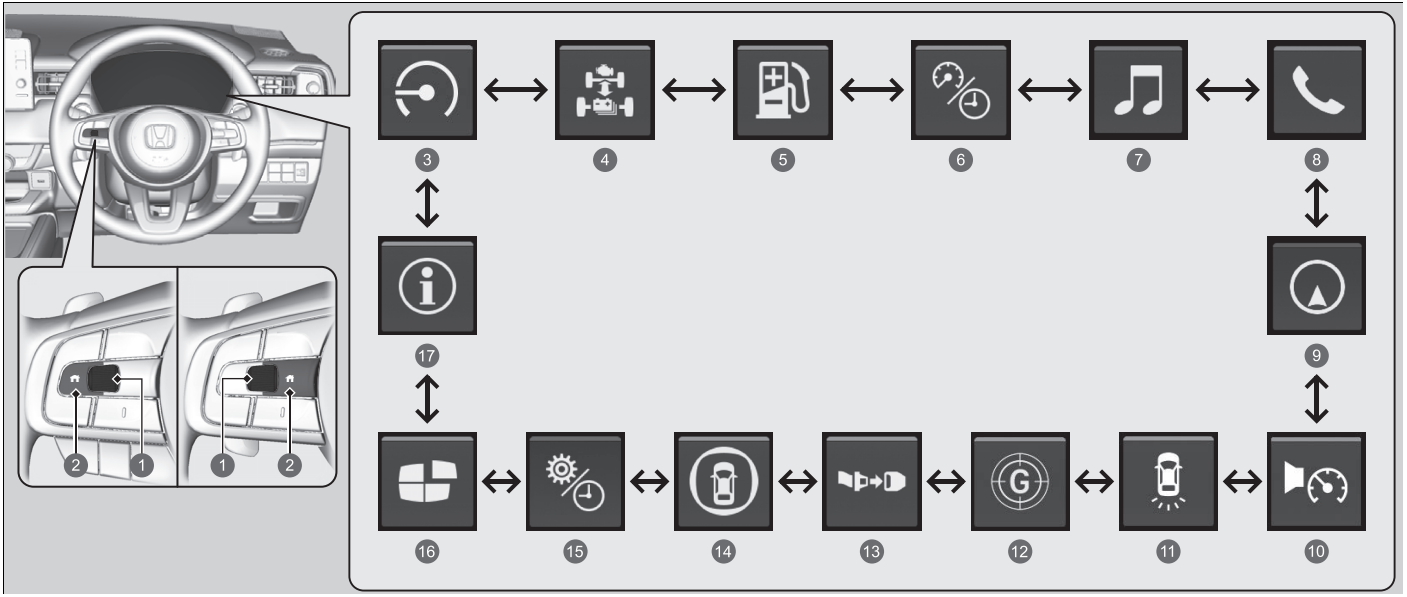
Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.
- **Customize Display** P. 145

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Continued



1. Left Selector Wheel
2. (Home) Button
3. **Power/Charge**[*1]**/Gauge Only**[*2] P. 133
4. **Power Flow** P. 134
5. **Range & Fuel** P. 135
6. **Speed & Time** P. 137
7. **Audio**[*] P. 139
8. **Phone**[*] P. 139
9. **Navigation**[*] P. 139
10. **Speed Alarm**[*] P. 140
11. **Brake Light Display**[*1]/ **Brake Light Status**[*2] P. 141
12. **G-Meter**[*] P. 142
13. **Seat Belts** P. 143
14. **Safety Support** P. 143
15. **Settings**[*] P. 146
16. **Customize Display** P. 145
17. **Information**[*1]**/Warnings**[*2] P. 145

*1: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

 * Not available on all models

■ Power/Charge*1/Gauge Only*2

Shows the degree to which the electric motor is being powered and the High Voltage battery is being charged. Other contents will be hidden.

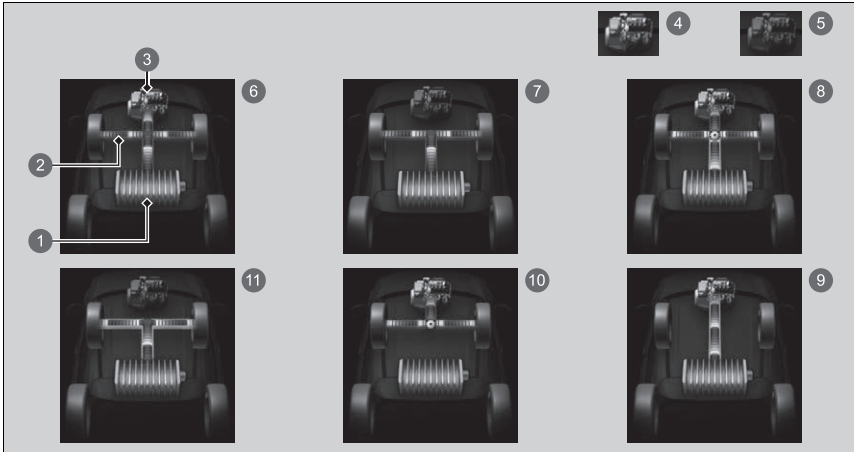
➲ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 128

*1: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Continued

■ Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source, remaining battery level, and whether the battery is being charged.



❶ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
❷ Power Flow ❸ Engine ❹ Engine ON ❺ Engine OFF
❻ **Hybrid (HV)**: Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.
❼ **Electric Vehicle (EV)**: Power is supplied by the motor.
❽ **Engine (Direct Drive)**: The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
❾ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.
❿ Power is being supplied by the engine only.
⓫ **Regeneration**: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

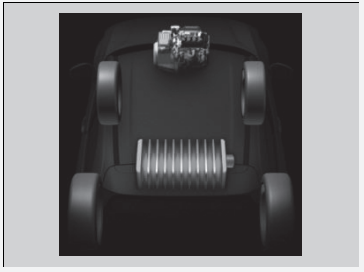
Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:
- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

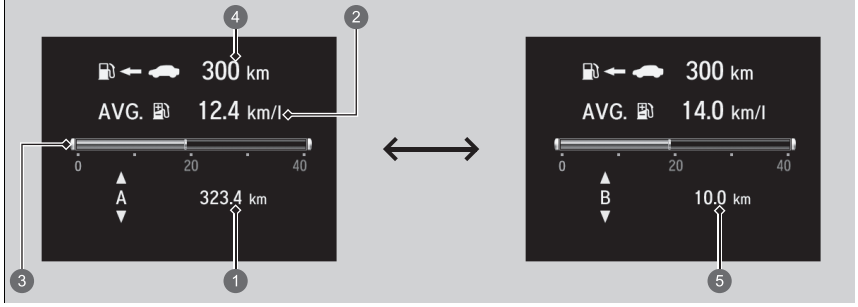
While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



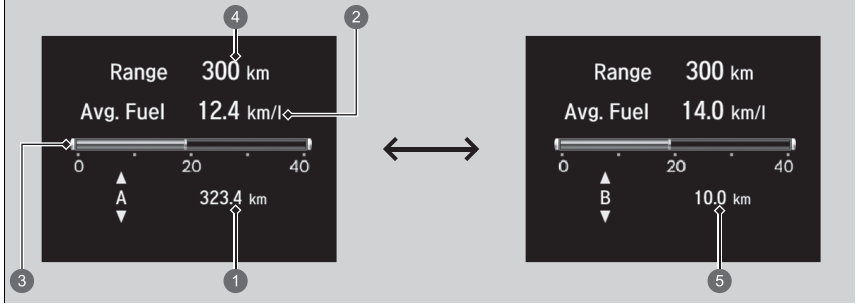
■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



❶ Trip Meter A
❷ Average Fuel Economy
❸ Instant Fuel Economy
❹ Range
❺ Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter
Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter
To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100km*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy
Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km*.

■ Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Taiwanese, Indonesian, Thai, Filipino, Vietnamese, Cambodian, Laotian, Pakistani, Singaporean, and Malaysian models

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.
➔ **Settings*** P. 146
➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.
➔ **Settings*** P. 146
➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

Range

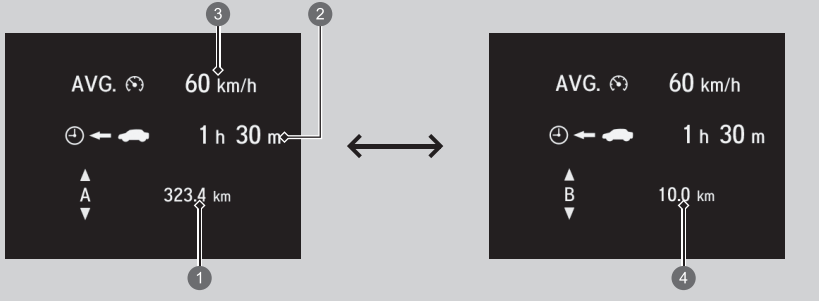
The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

 * Not available on all models

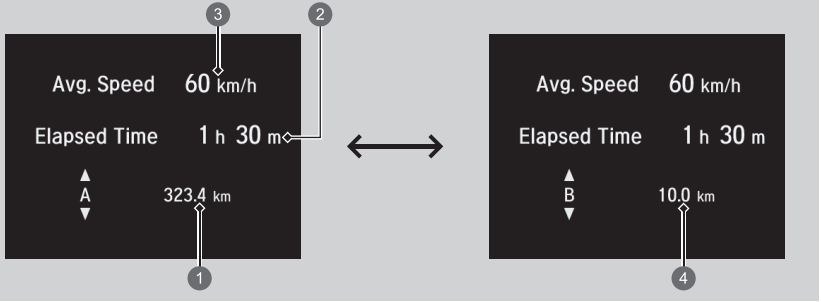
■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



❶ Trip meter A
❷ Elapsed Time
❸ Average Speed
❹ Trip meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter

Trip meter P. 136

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

 * Not available on all models

■ Audio*

Shows the current audio information.

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 277

■ Phone*

Shows the current phone information.

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 344

■ Navigation*

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto, or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 319
➔ **Android Auto™** P. 326

Navigation*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

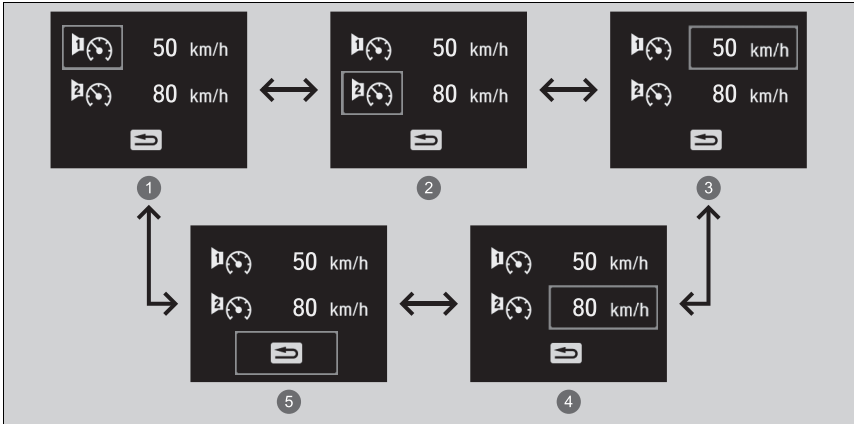
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h*1]
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h*1]
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ Brake Light Display*1/Brake Light Status*2

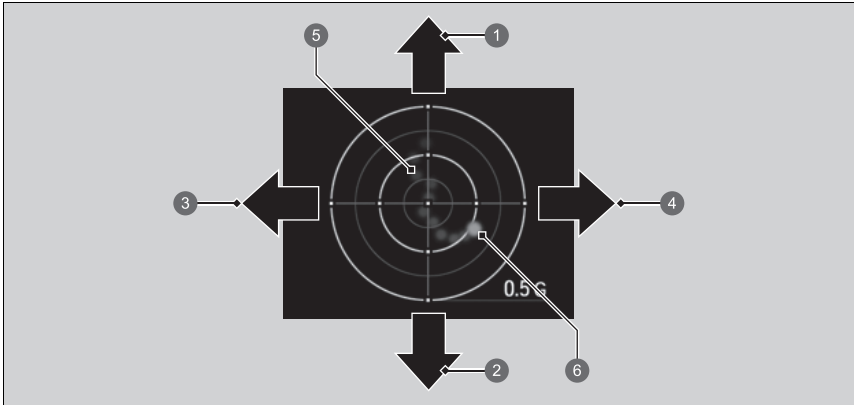
Shows the current status of brake lights, headlights, etc.

*1: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Continued

■ G-meter*

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



❶ When decelerated while moving forward
When accelerated while reversing
❷ When accelerated while moving forward
When decelerated while reversing
❸ When steering to the right
❹ When steering to the left
❺ Lateral forces of the past three seconds (white)
❻ Real-time lateral force (red)

G-meter*

The meter does not display a lateral force larger than 0.5 G.

 * Not available on all models

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➔ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 49

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, Low Speed Braking Control*, and blind spot information system*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

Safety Support

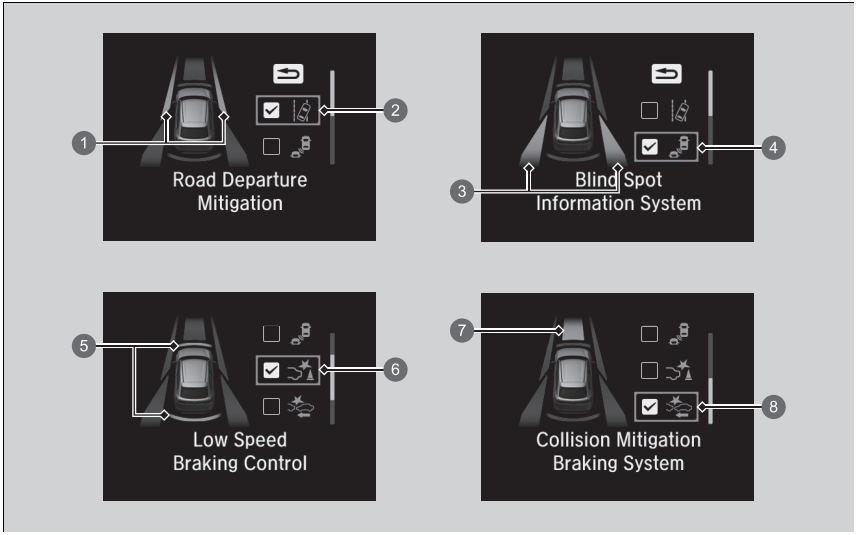
If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 453
➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 433
➔ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 447
➔ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 424

* Not available on all models

Continued



1. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
2. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
3. Area Info for Blind Spot Information System*
4. Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info*
5. Area Info for Low Speed Braking Control*
6. Low Speed Braking Control Icon and Status Info*
7. Area Info for CMBS
8. CMBS Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 124
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)** P. 124
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 124
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)** P. 124
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator** P. 124
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 125
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 127

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

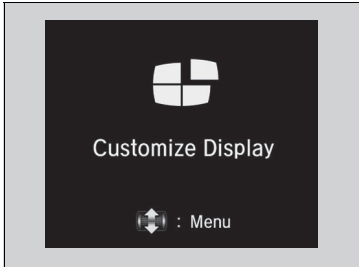
Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the parking sensor is turned off for the rear only, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

- **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 528

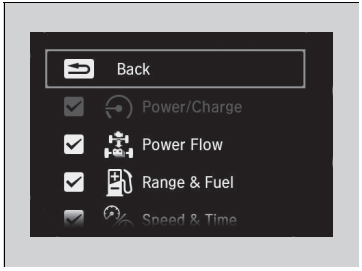
 * Not available on all models

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize Display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

Information*1/Warnings*2

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Information*1/Warnings*2

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

*1: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

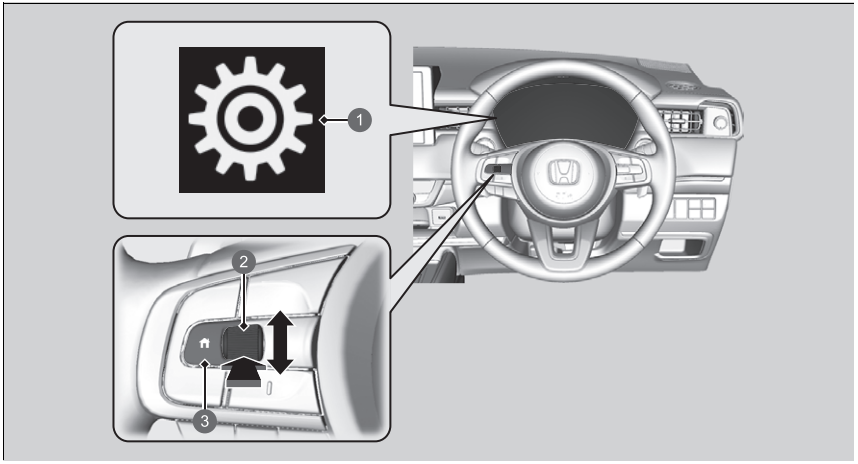
Continued

■ Settings*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the [home] (home) button, then select the (**Settings**) screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in [P]. Then press the left selector wheel.



❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ [home] (Home) Button

Settings*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 147
Example of customization settings P. 157

When you customize settings, shift to [P].

 * Not available on all models

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration*	—	Calibrates the TPMS.	**Cancel/Calibrate**
Clock Setup	**Clock Adjustment**	Adjust the time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 162	—
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Clock Display**	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h*1/OFF**
	Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Clock Format**		
Driver Assist System Setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Far/Normal*1/Near**
	Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Forward Collision Warning Distance**		Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Long/Normal*1/Short**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Assist System Setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep**	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC with Low Speed Follow range.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Lead Car Departure Notification System[*]	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Early/OFF**
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning Only** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Narrow/Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Assist System Setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Lane Keep Assist Beep** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep**	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Meter Setup	Middle Eastern and African left hand drive models **Language** Latin American models **Language Selection**	Changes the displayed language.	Middle Eastern and African left hand drive models **Arabic**[*1]**/English** Latin American models **ENGLISH/FRANÇAIS/ ESPAÑOL**[*1]
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**"Trip A" Reset Timing**	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset***1 Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset***1
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset***1 Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset***1

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Alarm Volume Control** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Adjust Alarm Volume**	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight[*]	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Fuel Economy Unit[*]	Selects the fuel economy unit.	Except Vietnamese models **km/l**[*1]**/l/100km** Vietnamese models **km/l/l/100km**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	**Door Unlock Mode***	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only*1/All Doors**
	Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High*1/Low**
	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
Lighting Setup	**Auto High-Beam***	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Adaptive Driving Beam*	Turns the Adaptive driving beam on and off.	**ON*1/OFF**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Interior Light Dimmer Duration** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Interior Light Dimming Time**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec*1/15sec**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting Setup	**Headlight Auto OFF Timer**	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec***1**/0sec**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Headlight Integration With Wipers** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON**	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock***	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed*1/ Shift From P/OFF**
	Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors and tailgate automatically unlock.	Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepalese, and Bruneian models **Shift To P*1/IGN OFF/OFF** South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepalese, and Bruneian models **Driver Door With Shift To P*1/All Doors With Shift To P/Driver Door With IGN OFF/All Doors With IGN OFF/OFF**
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the keyless remote or built-in key.	**Driver Door Only*1/All Doors**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Walk Away Lock** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Walk Away Auto Lock**	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Keyless Lock Notification** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Keyless Lock Answer Back**	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Keyless Remote Power Window Control[*]	Turns remote window control using the keyless remote on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Auto Folding Door Mirror[*]	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**Auto Fold With Keyless**[*1]**/ Manual Only**
	Lock Presetting[*]	Changes the settings for the lock presetting function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

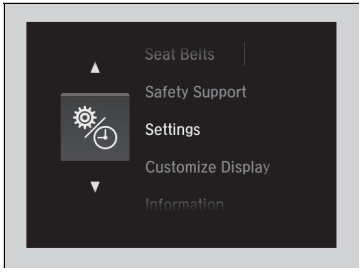
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Power Tailgate Setup*	**Keyless Open Mode**	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime*1/When Unlocked**
	Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)*1/ OFF (Manual Only)**
	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Hands Free Access** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Hands Free Access Function**	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON*1/OFF**
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Cancel/OK** Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models **Cancel/Set**

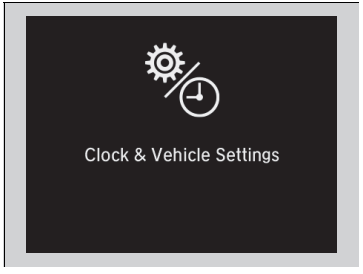
*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ Example of customization settings

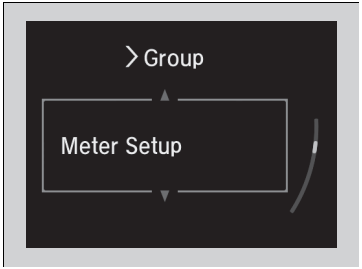
The steps for changing the **“Trip A” Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **“Trip A” Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset/Manual Reset**.





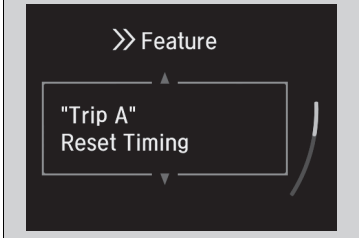
1. Press the button and roll the left selector wheel to select (**Settings**), then press the left selector wheel.

Continued

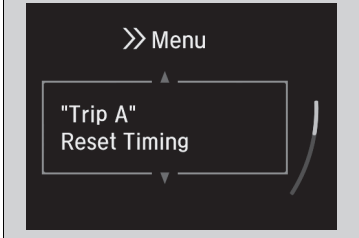


2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.

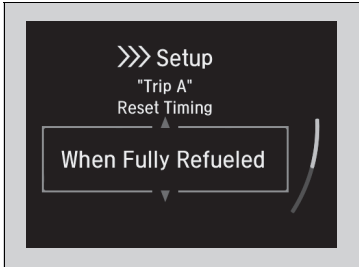
Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

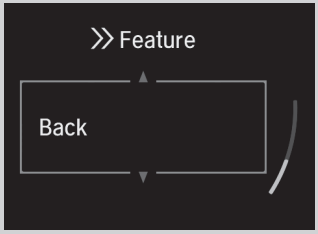


4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **IGN OFF/When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manually Reset/Manual Reset**, or **Back**.

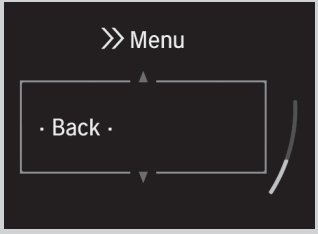


5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.

Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



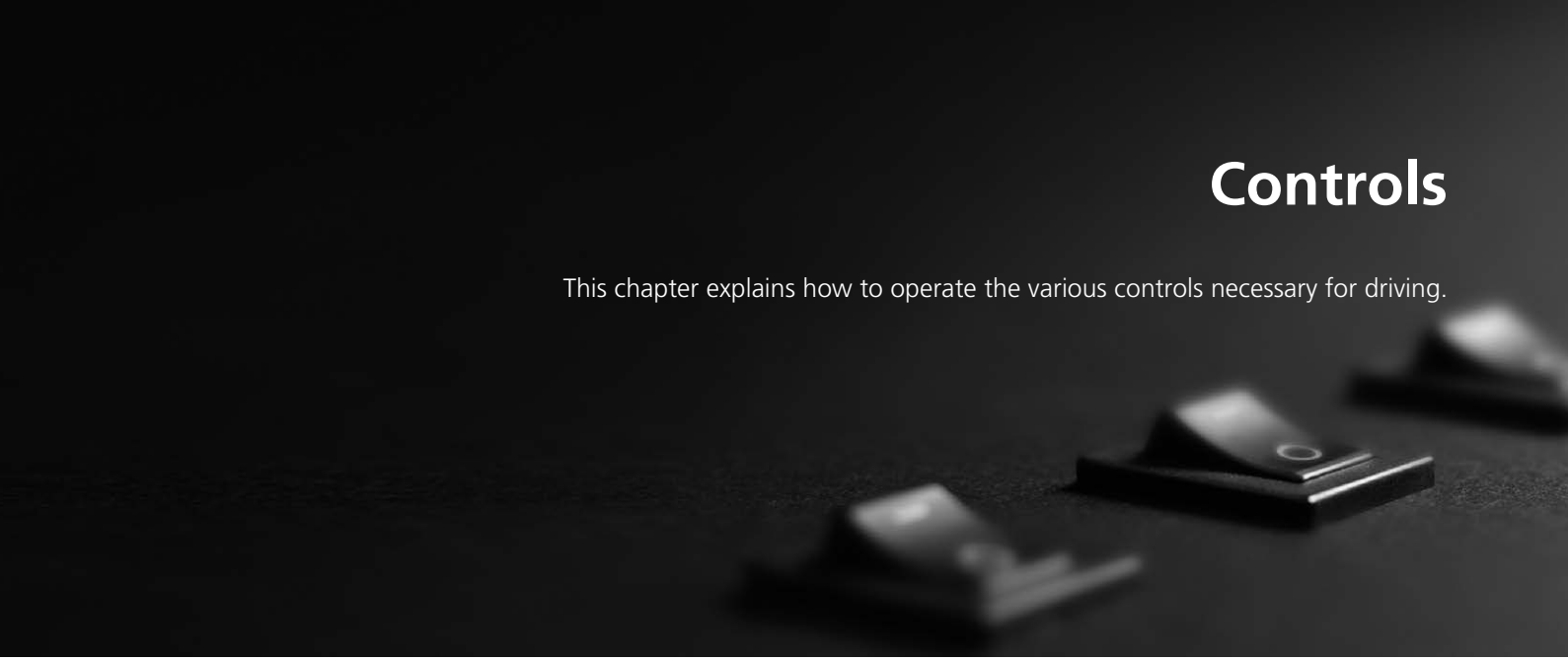
Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 162
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 165
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength ... 167
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 168
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 179
Childproof Door Locks 182
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* 183
Tailgate 184
Security System
Immobilizer System 195
Security System Alarm 196
Windows 198
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
POWER Button 202
Lights 205
Active Cornering Lights* 212
Headlight Adjuster* 214
Auto High-Beam* 215
Adaptive Driving Beam* 218
Wipers and Washers 222
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button ... 225
Brightness Control 226
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 227
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 228
Power Door Mirrors 229
Seats 232
Interior Convenience Items 245
Climate Control System 264

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

Singaporean and Oceanian models

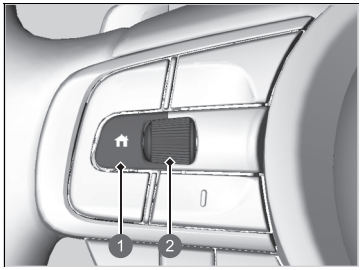
You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Clock Setup P. 290

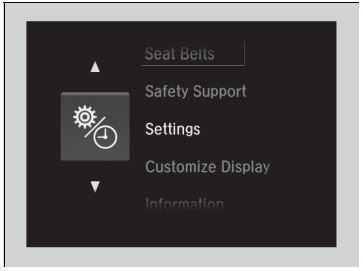
Adjusting the Clock

Singaporean and Oceanian models

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.



❶ (Home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel



Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

■ Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

1. Press the (Home) button.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.

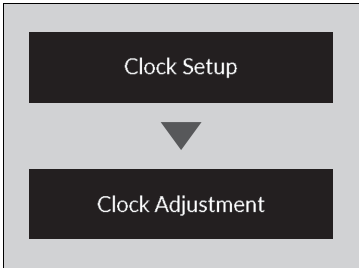
Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

You can change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

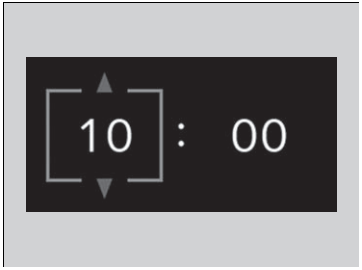
Settings* P. 146

* Not available on all models

Continued



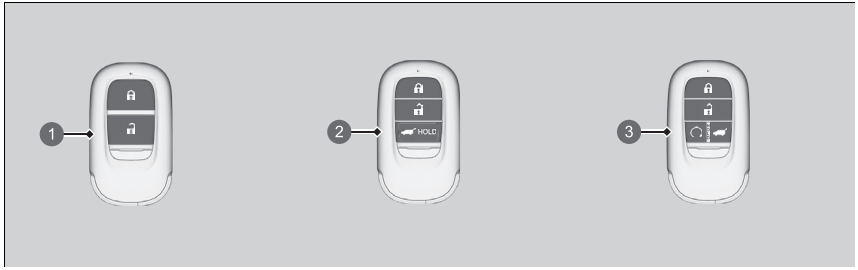
3. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then press the left selector wheel.
4. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Adjustment**, then press the left selector wheel.



5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then press it.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then press it.

Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



❶ Keyless Remote
❷ Keyless Remote with power tailgate button
❸ Keyless Remote with button and power tailgate button

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 195

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with button

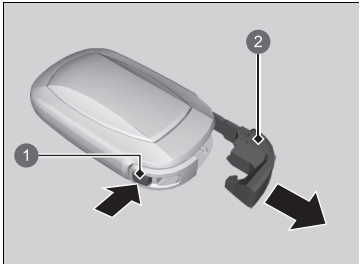
You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start* P. 385

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Built-in Key

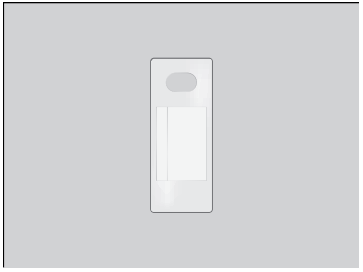


The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull out the key while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

❶ Release Button
❷ Built-in Key

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

In the following cases, activating the power system or locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

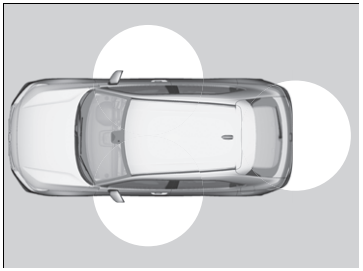
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate.
You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

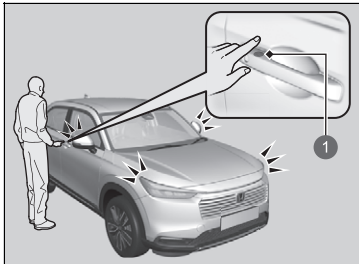
➡ **Interior Lights** P. 245

Using the Keyless Access System

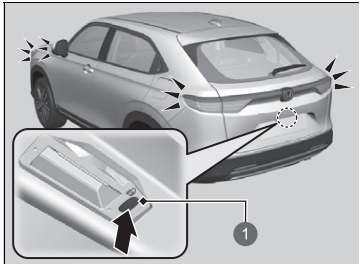
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

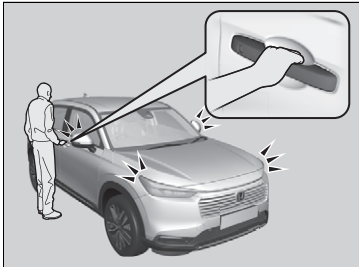
▶ Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate, lock; and the security system sets.

Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

Continued

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



*1

Grab the front door handle:

▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

*2

Grab the driver's door handle:

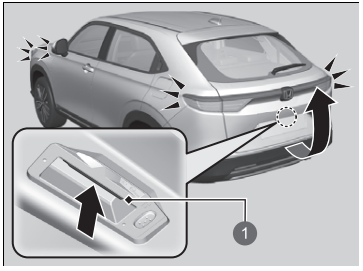
▶ The driver's door unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the outer handle:

*1

▶ All doors and tailgate unlock.

*2

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

All models

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 185

❶ Outer Handle

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

*2: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode* settings can be customized using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

➡ **Settings*** P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

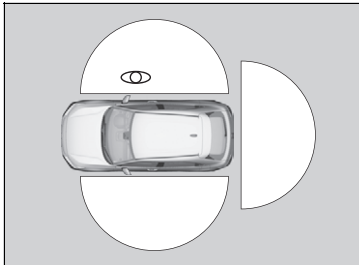
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 337

Models with power tailgate

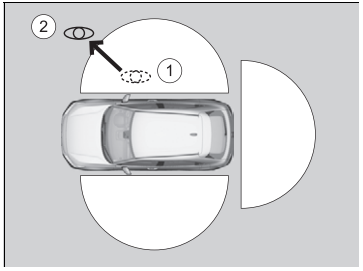
You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*** P. 186

* Not available on all models



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed or all doors are closed and tailgate begins power close operation*, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Exit the vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s) and tailgate.

① While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

② Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface or audio/information screen*, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.

2. Open the driver's door.

3. Using the master door lock switch or lock tab on the driver's door, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto-lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

Models with power tailgate

If equipped, the user must wait until the power tailgate fully closes before the auto lock function will be activated.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

Models with power tailgate

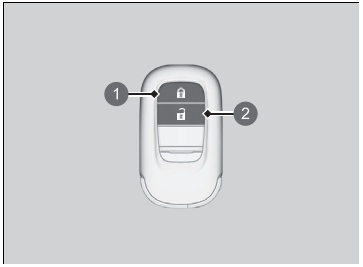
If you use the power tailgate walk away close function when all the doors are closed, the auto lock function will also be activated.

▶When you walk away from the vehicle while the power tailgate is automatically closing, it will continue to lock automatically.

Power Tailgate Walk Away Close P. 188

Continued

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

*1

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and tailgate unlock.

*2

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlock.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 586

*2

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Settings*** P. 146

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

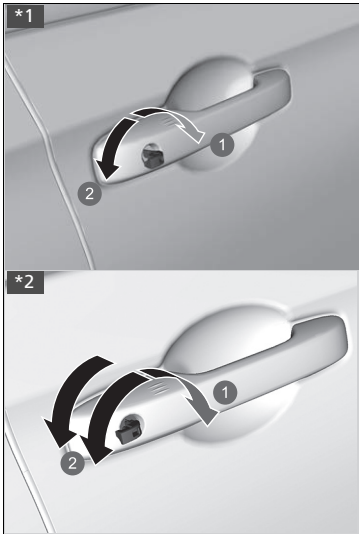
*2: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models
*2: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

*1
When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

*2
When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and tailgate.

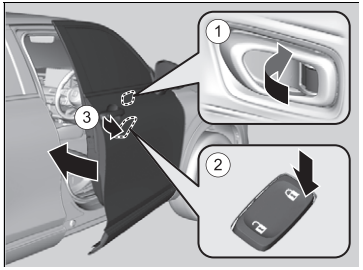
Except Latin American models
If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

*2
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.
Settings* P. 146

* Not available on all models

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

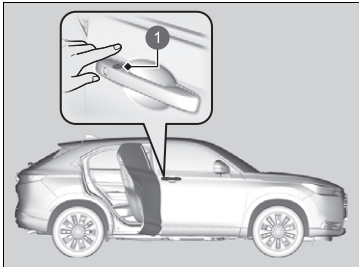
Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Continued

■ Lock Presetting



❶ Door Lock Sensor

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the door lock sensor on the driver's door or press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
▶ Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
2. Close all doors and the tailgate.
▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

Lock Presetting

Models with power tailgate

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the power tailgate on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury. Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the power tailgate.

All models

Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

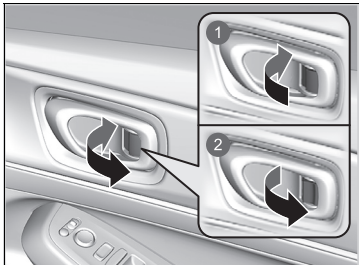
How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

Controls

 * Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To lock
❷ To unlock

■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models
*2: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

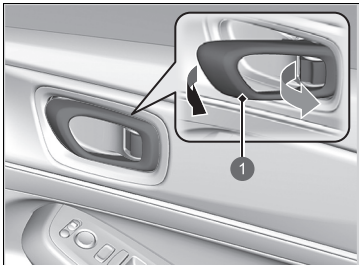
Continued

Using the Lock Tab

*1
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

*2
When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

*1

Latin American models

The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

1 Inner Handle

*1: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

Unlocking Using the Driver's Door and Front Passenger's Door* Inner Handle

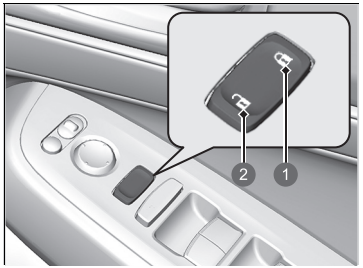
The driver's door and front passenger's* door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

Childproof Door Locks P. 182

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and tailgate.

❶ To lock
❷ To unlock

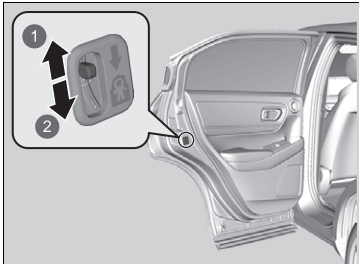
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

1 Unlock
2 Lock

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

*1

All doors and tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

*2

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

*2: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

* Not available on all models

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Settings* P. 146

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 105

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

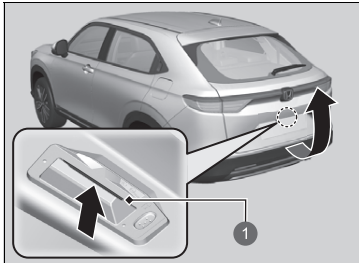
Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

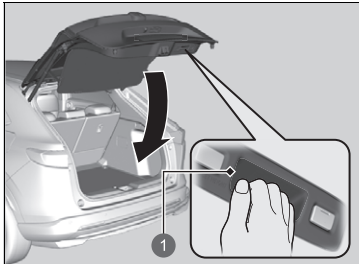
* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Tailgate



1 Outer Handle

When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.
If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



1 Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

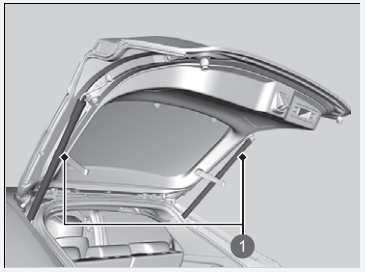
*1

If you close the tailgate when the driver's door is locked, the tailgate locks automatically.

*1: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Make sure luggage or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

*1

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

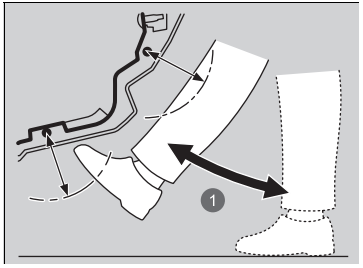
NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

 * Not available on all models

■ Using the Hands Free Access



❶ About 1 second

Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

Using the Hands Free Access

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the driver information interface or audio/information screen* and then select OFF for the feature.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

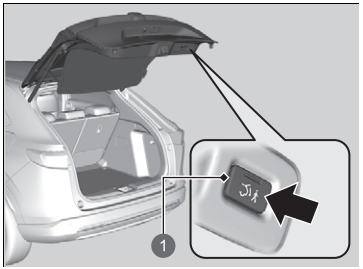
If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.
This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

* Not available on all models

Continued

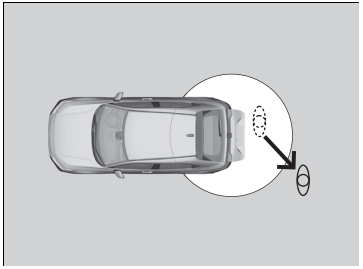
■ Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the power tailgate will automatically close.



❶ Walk Away Close Button

1. Carry the keyless remote and press the walk away close button.
▶ The indicator on the walk away close button will turn green when the walk away close is activated.



Walk at least 1.0 m away

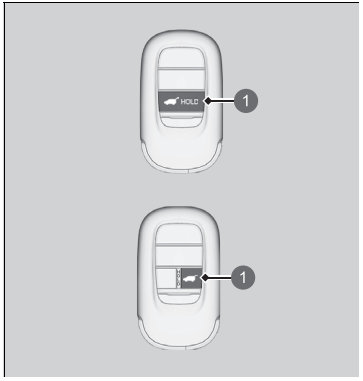
2. Walk at least 1.0 m away from the vehicle within 30 seconds of pressing the walk away close button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds, then the power tailgate begins to close.

Power Tailgate Walk Away Close

When auto lock function is set to ON, the vehicle will automatically lock when all doors and the tailgate have closed.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 171

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

❶ Power Tailgate Button

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked*1/When unlocked*2: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

*1: Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

*2: Singaporean and Oceanian models

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

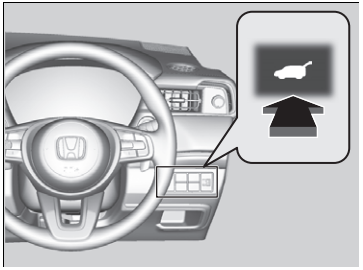
Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

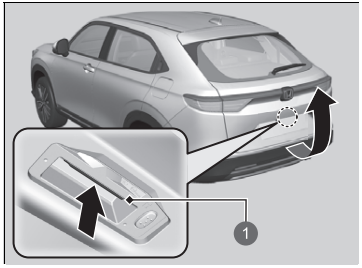
The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

*1
If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

*1: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



❶ Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 185

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.

*1

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

➡ **Settings*** P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

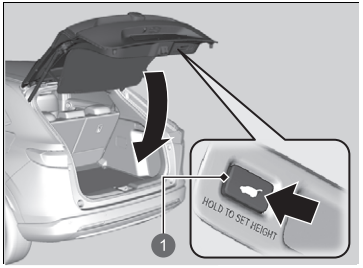
➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 337

*1: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



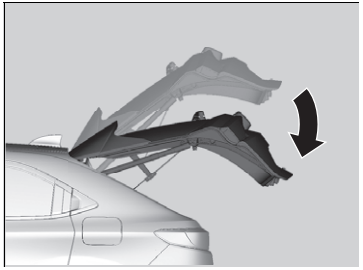
❶ Tailgate Inner Button

Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

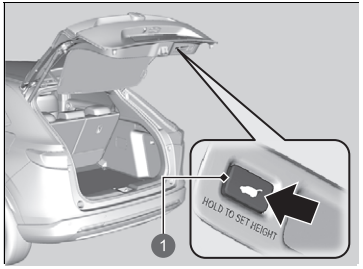
Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.



2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

❶ Tailgate Inner Button

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the directions step 2.

Continued

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, with snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

*1: Latin American models

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and the security system alarm indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

Models with power tailgate

- Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button on the dashboard.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

*1: Latin American models

Security System Alarm

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key*1, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Except Latin American models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Oceanian models with auto-open/close function on all windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Models with auto-open/close function on all windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

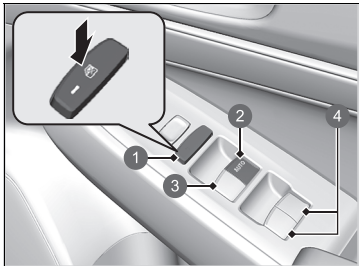
Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

Models with auto-open/close function on front windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



1. Power Window Lock Button
2. Driver's Window Switch
3. Front Passenger's Window Switch*
4. Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

* Not available on all models

Continued

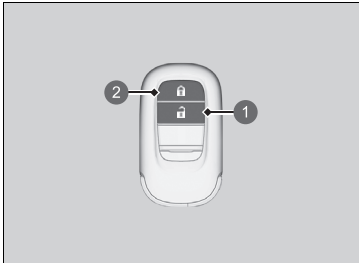
■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

❶ Close
❷ Open

■ Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote*



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

❶ Unlock Button
❷ Lock Button

Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote*

You can turn the remote window control function on and off.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

* Not available on all models

■ Closing the Windows with the Key*

❶ Close

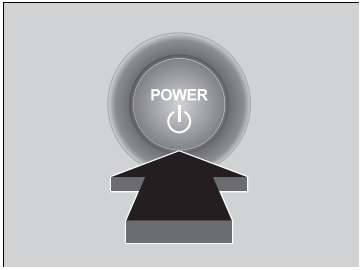
To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

* Not available on all models

POWER Button

■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

POWER Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

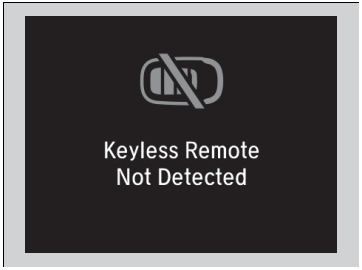
When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Continued

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and all the doors are closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

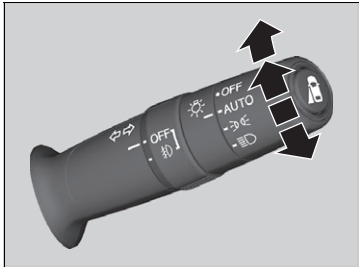
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the keyless remote is within the system's operational range.

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in P and the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Lights On Indicator** P. 119

Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to or and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

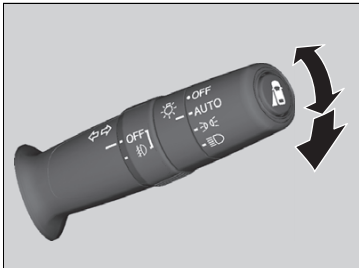
Models without headlight adjust function

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Continued

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



■ Flashing the high beams

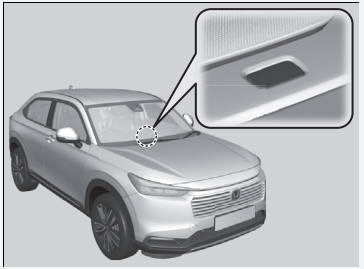
Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

► Release the lever to return to low beams.

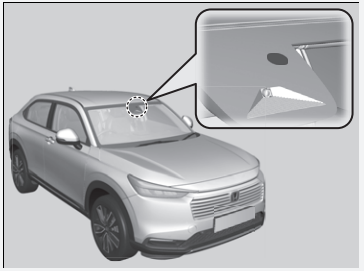
Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor.

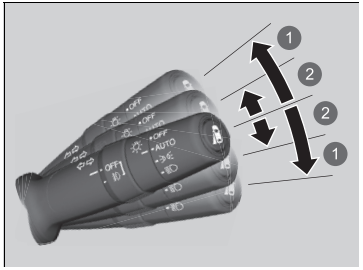
Models without automatic intermittent wiper



Models with automatic intermittent wiper



■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Indicators P. 108

Continued

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

* Not available on all models

■ Fog Lights*

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

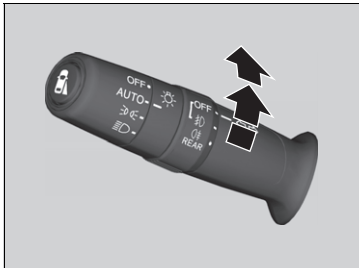
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights* are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position. The indicator comes on.

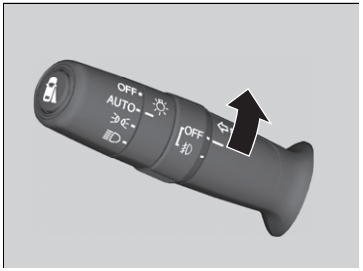
To turn the front and rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position. The and indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position and then rotate the switch one position down from the position. The indicator stays on.
To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

* Not available on all models

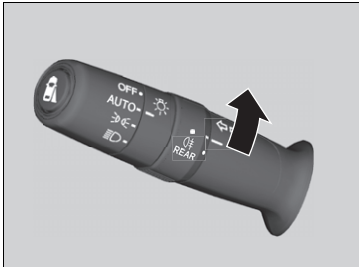
Continued

■ Front fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to the . The indicator comes on.

■ Rear fog light switch*



To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to the The indicator comes on.

 * Not available on all models

■ Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

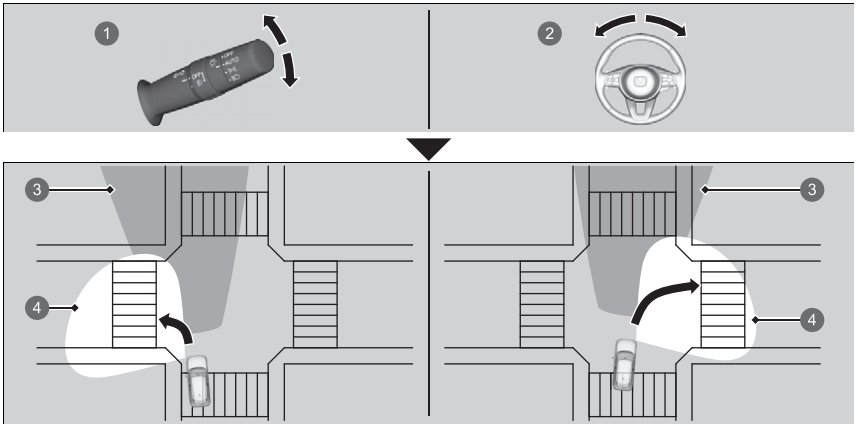
Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 36 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into R.

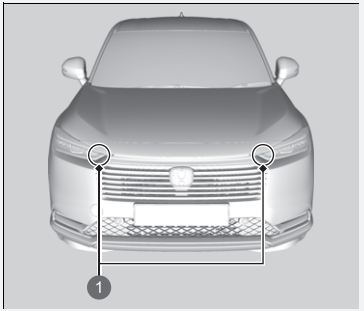
■ The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:



1. You operate the turn signal lever.
2. You turn the steering wheel around 75 degrees or more.
3. Headlight beam coverage
4. Cornering light beam coverage

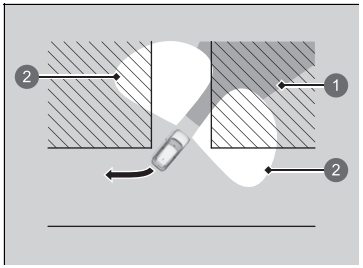
Active Cornering Lights*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in R, move it to another position momentarily.



1. Active Cornering Lights

 * Not available on all models

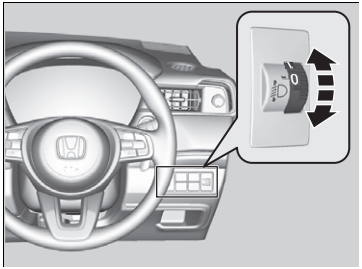


❶ Headlight beam coverage
❷ Cornering light beam coverage

■ **Both front corners are illuminated when:**

You put the transmission into R.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

Headlight Adjuster*

Models with adaptive driving beam

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

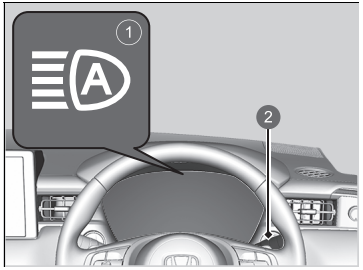
Auto High-Beam*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
Front Wide View Camera P. 507

For the auto high-beam to work properly:
- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⟷	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Auto High-Beam*

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Except Singaporean models

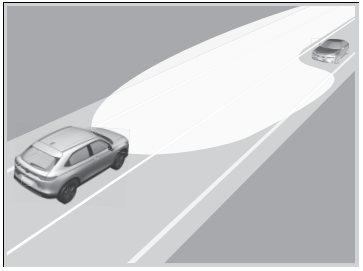
➡ **Settings*** P. 146

Singaporean models

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 337

* Not available on all models

Adaptive Driving Beam*



When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation.
In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

The system also increases the coverage of the low beams when the low beams are on and the vehicle speed is 40 km/h or less, improving visibility to the left and right.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

The adaptive driving beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera P. 507

For the adaptive driving beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

How to Use the Adaptive Driving Beam

Activating the system

The adaptive driving beam indicator comes on, and the system begins adjusting the light distribution of the high beams when all of the following conditions are met.

- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Adaptive Driving Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the adaptive driving beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to [AUTO] then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

How to turn off the Adaptive Driving Beam System

You can turn the adaptive driving beam system on and off.

Except Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatically adjusting the light distribution

The system starts to automatically adjust the light distribution of the high beams once the vehicle speed is 10 km/h or higher, and the light distribution changes depending on vehicle speed, or under the following conditions:

- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

If the vehicle speed slows to 6 km/h or lower, the system stops automatically adjusting the light distribution and switches the headlights to low beam.

Adaptive Driving Beam*

In the following cases, the adaptive driving beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The adaptive driving beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

* Not available on all models

■ **Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam**

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedure below. Note that when you do this, the adaptive driving beam indicator will turn off and the adaptive driving beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, follow either of the procedures below and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

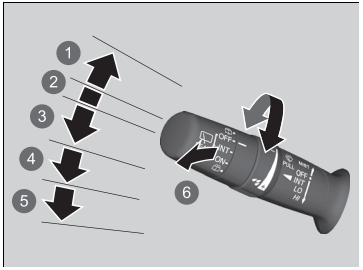
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

▶ To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1. **MIST**
2. **OFF**
3. **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
4. **LO**: Low speed wipe
5. **HI**: High speed wipe
6. Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*1, AUTO*2, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation

*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

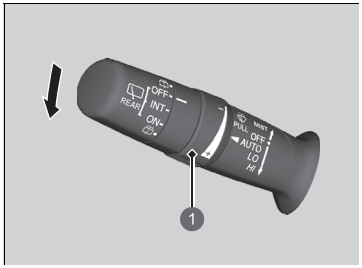
Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ( ) and the **LO** setting become the same.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



❶ Adjustment Ring

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity

Low sensitivity

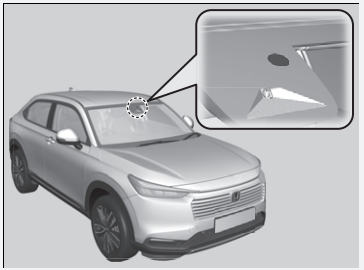
High sensitivity

Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

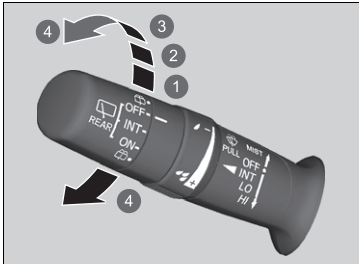
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **OFF**
❷ **INT**: Intermittent
❸ **ON**: Continuous wipe
❹ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (⛲)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

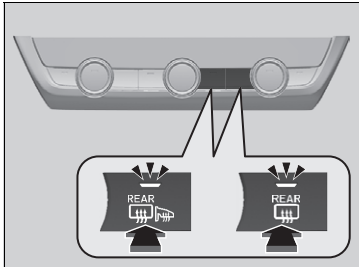
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT*1 (Intermittent) **AUTO***2 (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low-speed wipe) **HI** (High-speed wipe)	Continuous

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror* button to demist the rear window and mirrors* when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister and heated door mirror* automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

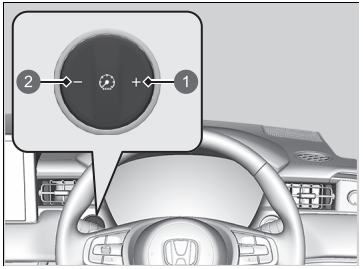
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Models with heated door mirror button

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



❶ + Button
❷ − Button

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the + or − button to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Press the + button.
Dim: Press the − button.

*1
You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum.

All models
Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

■ Brightness level indicator
The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

*1: Except South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

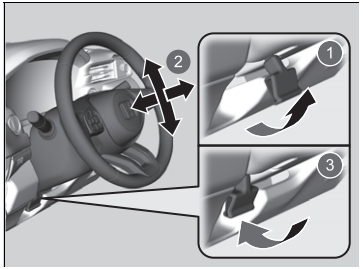
Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on.
- The ambient lighting is low.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
   ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
   ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
   ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

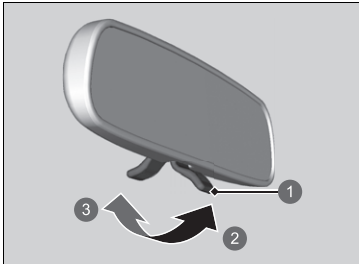
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

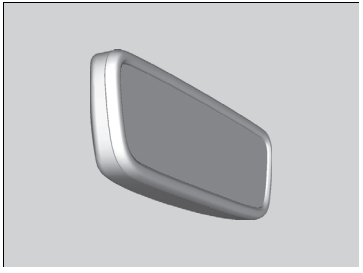
■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

1. Tab
2. Night Position
3. Daytime Position

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

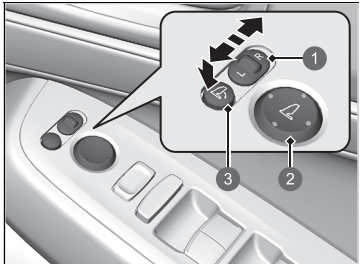
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 232

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



1 Selector Switch
2 Adjustment Switch
3 Folding Door Mirror Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

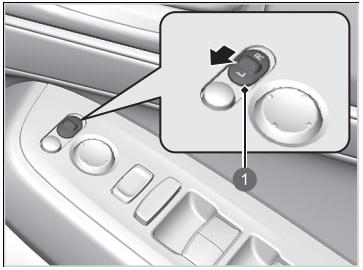
Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors**

Press the folding door mirror button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Continued

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



❶ Selector Switch

If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into R; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of R.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

 * Not available on all models

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, touch the door lock sensor on either front door, or press the lock button on tailgate.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the keyless remote or keyless access system. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

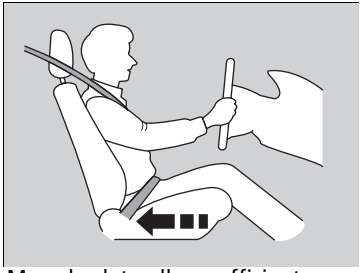
Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

⚠WARNING

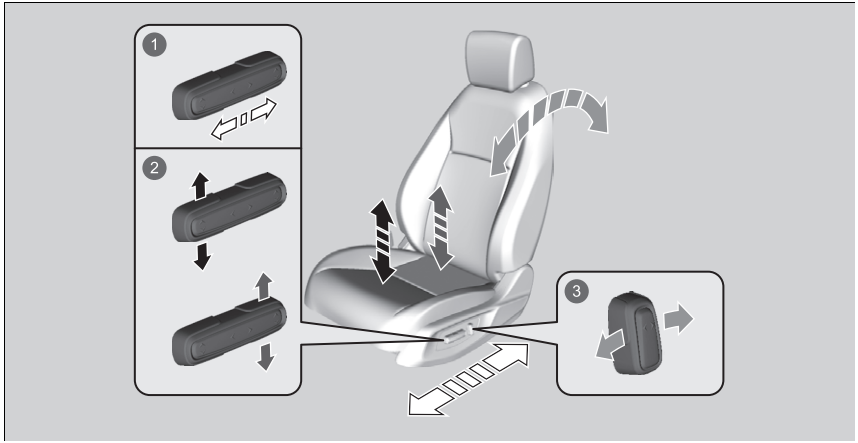
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the driver's power seat*



❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Slide the switch to move the seat.

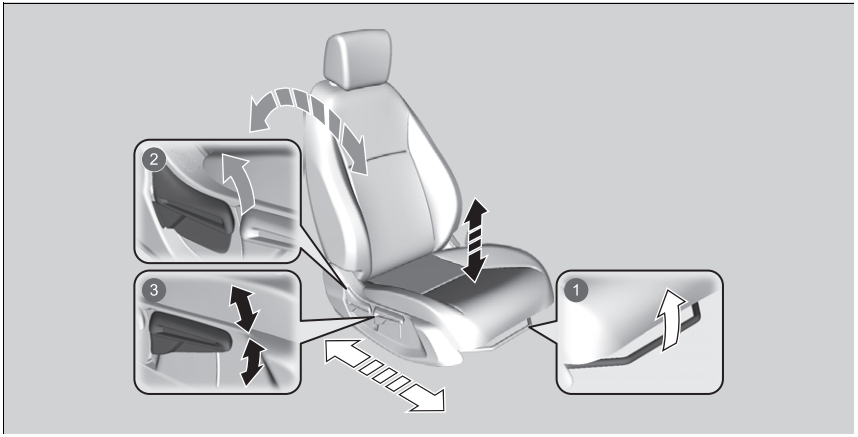
❷ **Height Adjustment**
Pull up or push down the switch to raise or lower the seat.

❸ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Push forward or pull backward the switch to change the angle.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Adjusting the front manual seat



❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

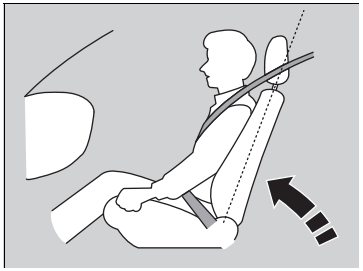
❷ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

❸ **Height Adjustment (Driver's side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

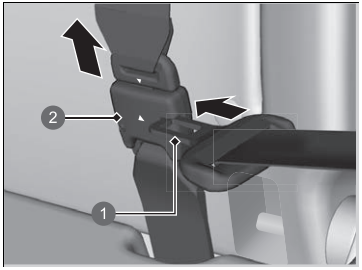
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

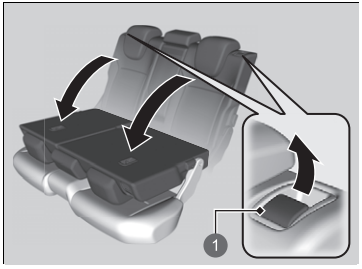
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Anchorage Buckle



❶ Release Lever

Except Oceanian models

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage*
P. 55

All models

3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

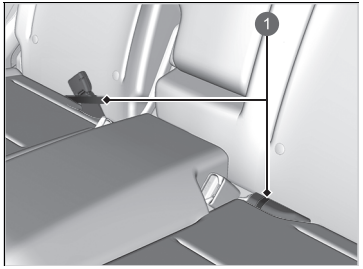
The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

* Not available on all models

■ Folding Up the Rear Seat



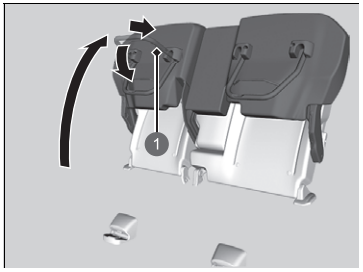
❶ Loop

Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

■ Lifting up the seat cushion

Except Oceanian models

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.



❶ Seat Leg

All models

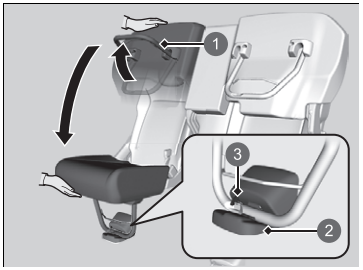
2. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
4. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

Folding Up the Rear Seat

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.

Continued



❶ Seat Leg
❷ Floor Guide
❸ Latch

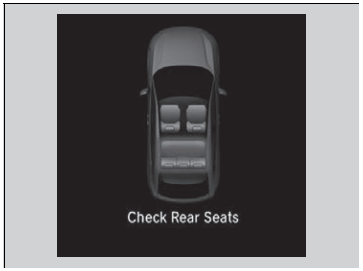
■ **Putting the seat in the original position**

1. Hold the seat cushion in place with one hand, then unlock it by pulling up the seat leg fully with your other hand.
▶ Hold the seat cushion firmly, as it may abruptly fall when you unlock it.

2. Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

* Not available on all models

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

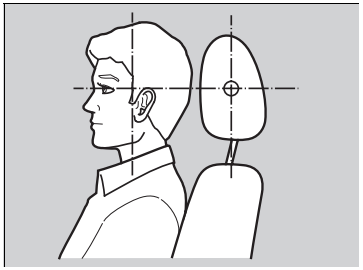
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

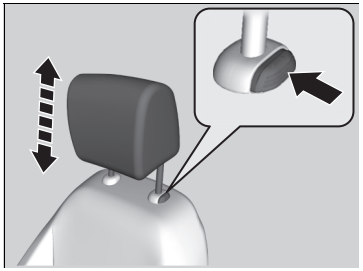
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

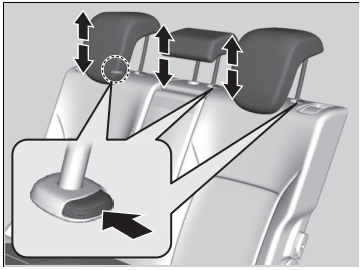
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre* back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

Except Oceanian models

* Not available on all models

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

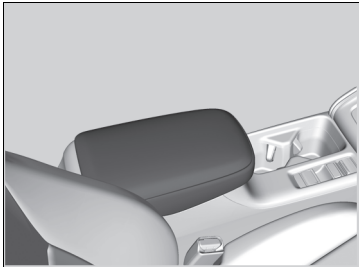
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



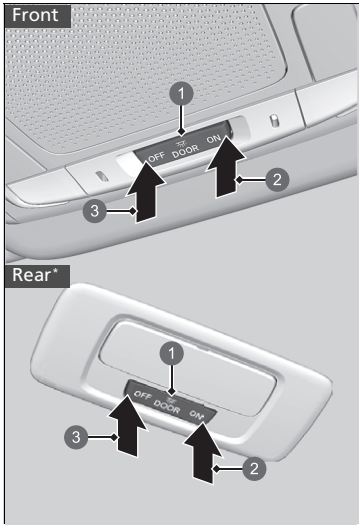
The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest

Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



❶ Door Activated Position
❷ On
❸ Off

■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Except Singaporean and Oceanian models

Settings* P. 146

Singaporean and Oceanian models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 337

The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

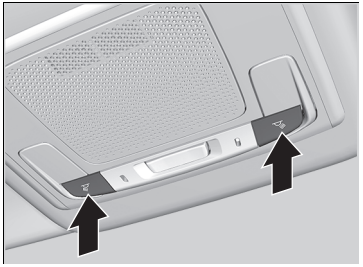
To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

* Not available on all models

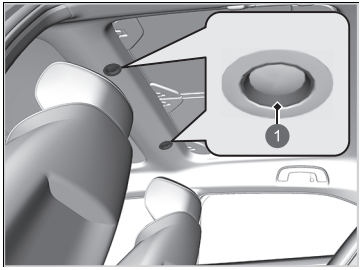
Continued

■ Map Light Switches



■ Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.



■ Rear seat*

The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

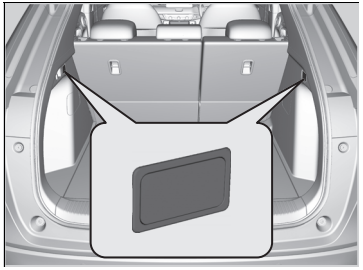
1 Touch

Map Light Switches

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the buttons or touch the map lights*.

* Not available on all models

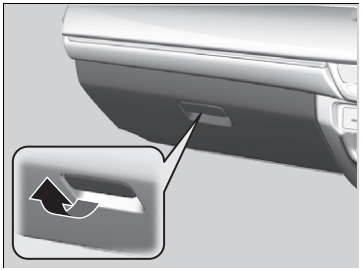
■ Luggage Area Lights



The luggage area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

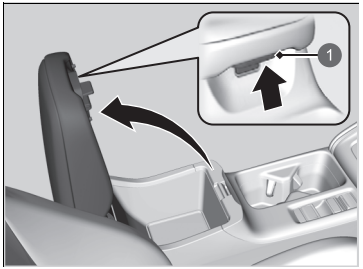
Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

■ Console Box



Pull the knob to open the console box.

1 Knob

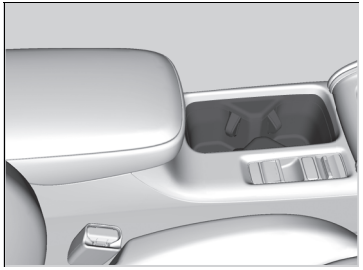
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Beverage Holders

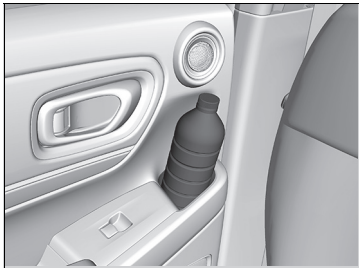


■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

■ Front door side beverage holders

Are located on both of front door side pockets.



■ Rear door side beverage holders

Are located on both of rear door.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

Continued

■ Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

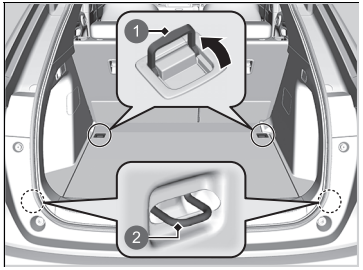
■ Coat Hooks

There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles.

Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Tie-down Anchorages



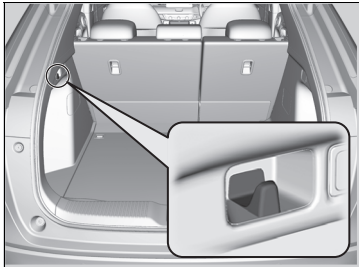
The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

❶ Anchorages
❷ Anchorages

Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

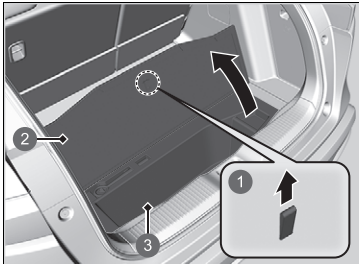
Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Continued

■ Under-floor Storage Area



Pull the strap to open the luggage floor lid.

❶ Strap
❷ Luggage Floor Lid
❸ Luggage Floor Box

Under-floor Storage Area

⚠WARNING

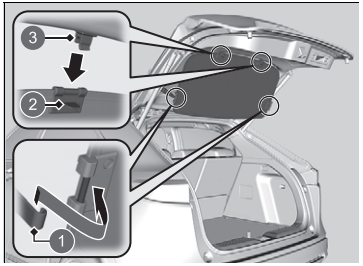
Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.

This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

Do not drive with the lid upright.
This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.



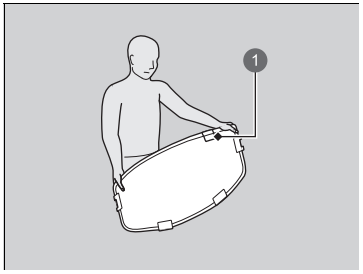
❶ Hooks
❷ Tab
❸ Guide

■ To remove the luggage area cover

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the luggage area cover from hooks on both sides.
3. Remove the cover from the guide while keeping the tab depressed.

   Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

   After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.



❶ Tag

■ To store the luggage area cover

1. Hold the corner near the tag on the cover.

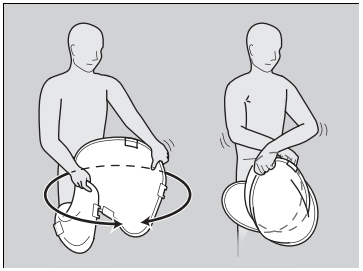
Luggage Area Cover*

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

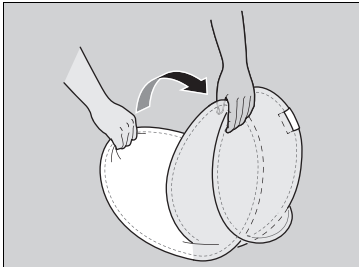
When removing the luggage area cover, hold it firmly with your hands as it may open vigorously. Carefully check the surrounds and slowly open the cover while holding it firmly with both hands.

* Not available on all models

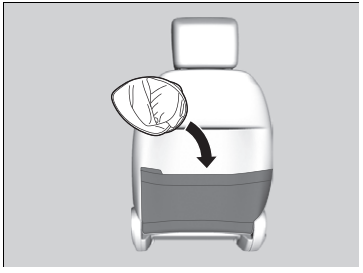
Continued



2. Hold both corners of the luggage area cover with your arms crossed one on the other and fold the cover.



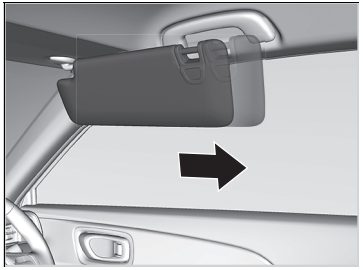
3. Bring both circular halves together in perfect alignment.



4. Store the luggage area cover in the back pocket of the front seat while keeping it firmly pushed by hand.

Other Interior Convenience Items

Sun Visor

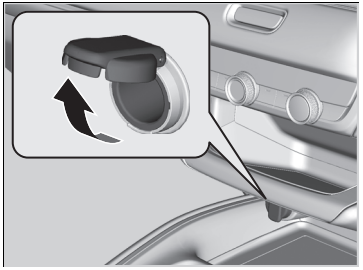


The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

Continued

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

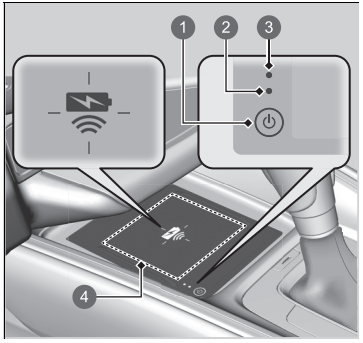
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



1. (Power) Button
2. Green Indicator
3. Amber Indicator
4. Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

■ Change the charging frequency

Press the button once while charging will change the charging frequency and reduce radio noise.
▶ The amber indicator light blink three times.
▶ Before changing the frequency, turn the system off to make sure the radio noise is reduced.

Wireless Charger*

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.
- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta-neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Wireless Charger*

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

 * Not available on all models

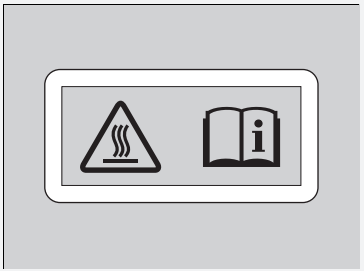
Wireless Charger*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All doors or the tailgate are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge. The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

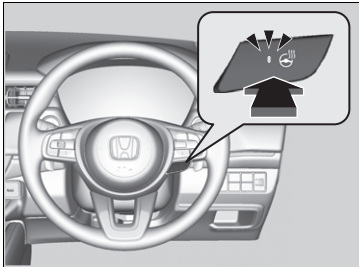


Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Heated Steering Wheel*



The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

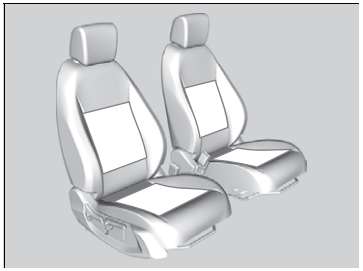
The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel*

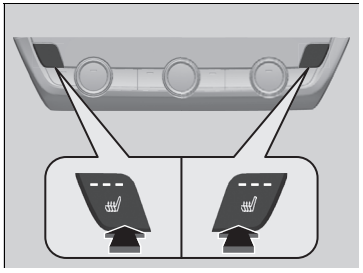
Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

* Not available on all models

Front Seat Heaters*



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lowerlimb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

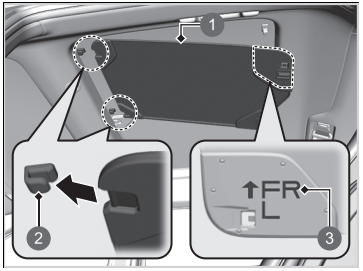
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

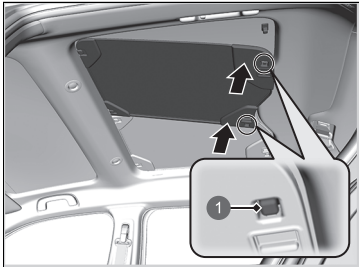
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Rear Sunshades*



❶ Rear Sunshade
❷ Hooks
❸ FR Mark



❶ Lock

■ Rear sunshades Installation

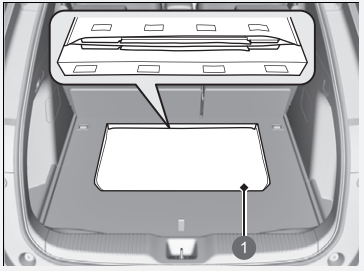
1. Insert the front side into the hooks.
▶ Install the rear sunshade as FR mark towards front.

2. Push up the rear side and lock.
▶ Push the rear sunshades until you hear a click.

Rear Sunshades*

Park the vehicle in a safe place before installing and removing the rear sunshades. Also, make sure the rear sunshades are securely latched back into place before driving.

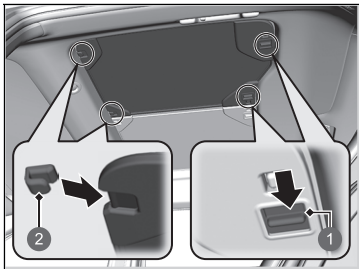
Put the removed rear sunshade in the case and store it in the luggage area.



❶ Case

To prevent rear sunshades damage, follow the instruction below.
- Do not place things on top of the case.
- Exercise care so that things around will not hit the case.

 * Not available on all models



❶ Lever
❷ Hooks

■ **Rear sunshades Removal**

1. Push and hold the lever inside and pull down the rear sunshades.
2. Pull out the rear sunshades rearwards and remove it.

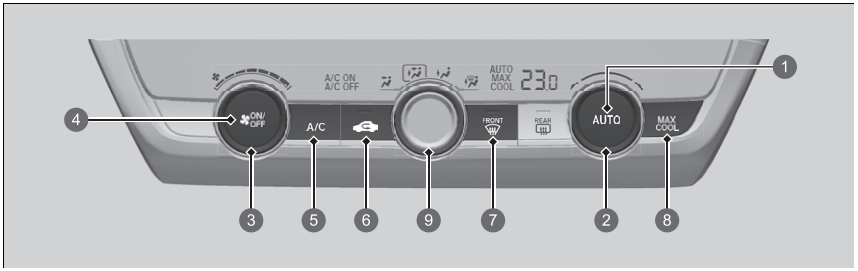
Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

Models without SYNC button



1. **AUTO** Button*1
2. Temperature Control Dial*1
3. Fan Control Dial*1
4. **ON/OFF** Button*1
5. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
6. (Recirculation) Button*1
7. FRONT (Windscreen Demister) Button*1
8. **MAX COOL** Button*
9. MODE Control Dial
   - Air flows from dashboard vents
   - Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
   - Air flows from floor vents
   - Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1: Right-hand drive types shown. For the left-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive type.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

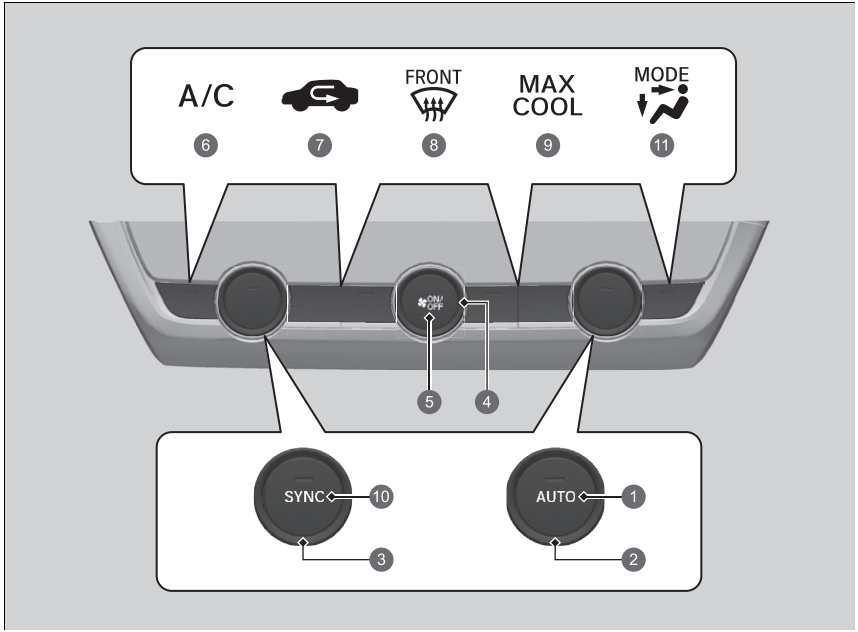
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Models without max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

The High Voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

Models with SYNC button



Because buttons and layouts vary depending on the models, them used in this manual may differ from your vehicle.

Using Automatic Climate Control

Models with max cool button

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button (indicator on* or **MAX COOL** is appeared*).

All Models

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

* Not available on all models

Continued

❶ **AUTO** Button
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❹ Fan Control Dial
❺ **ON/OFF** Button
❻ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
❼ (Recirculation) Button
❽ FRONT (Windscreen Demister) Button
❾ **MAX COOL** Button*
❿ **SYNC** (Synchronization) Button
⓫ MODE Control Button
- Air flows from dashboard vents
- Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
- Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

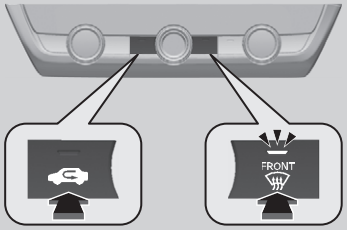
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

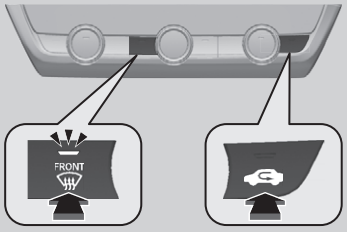
 * Not available on all models

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button



Oceanian models

*1

Pressing the FRONT button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Models for other countries

1. Pressing the FRONT button to turn the air conditioning system on.
2. Select the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.
3. Press the FRONT button to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

*1: South African, Mauritian, Seychellois, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepali, and Bruneian models

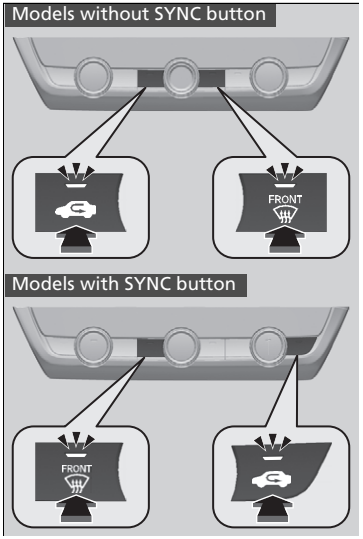
Continued

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

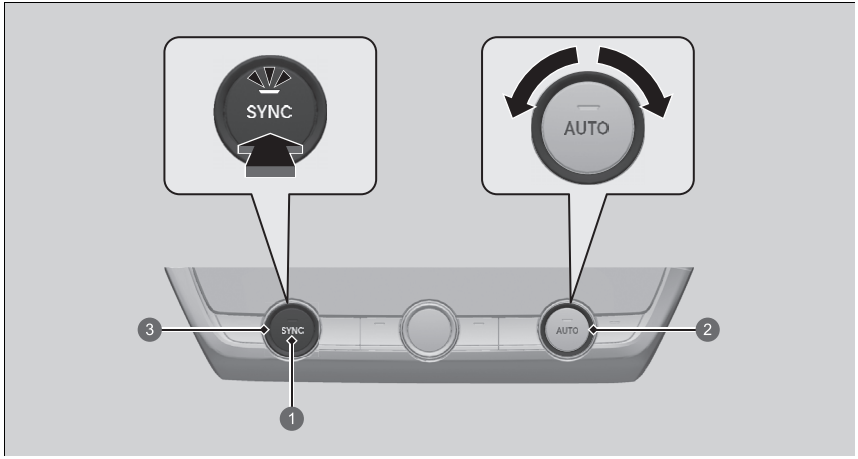


1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button (indicator on).

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode*



❶ **SYNC** button
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Synchronization Mode*

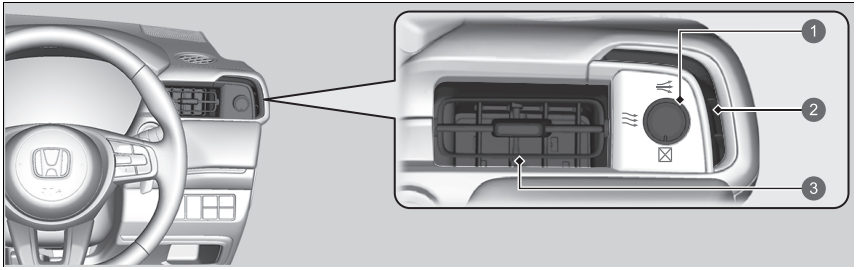
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

■ Selecting the Desired Air Outlet

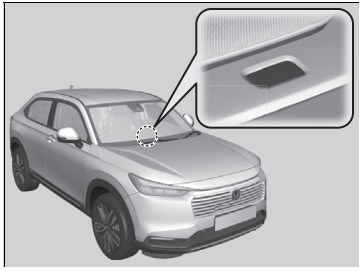
You can select the desired air outlet by turning the dial to the respective position.

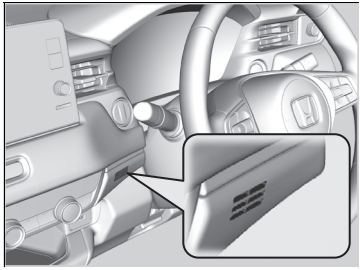
selects outlet ❷.
selects outlet ❸.
selects blockage of both ❷ and ❸.



❶ Dial
❷ Air Outlet
❸ Air Outlet

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

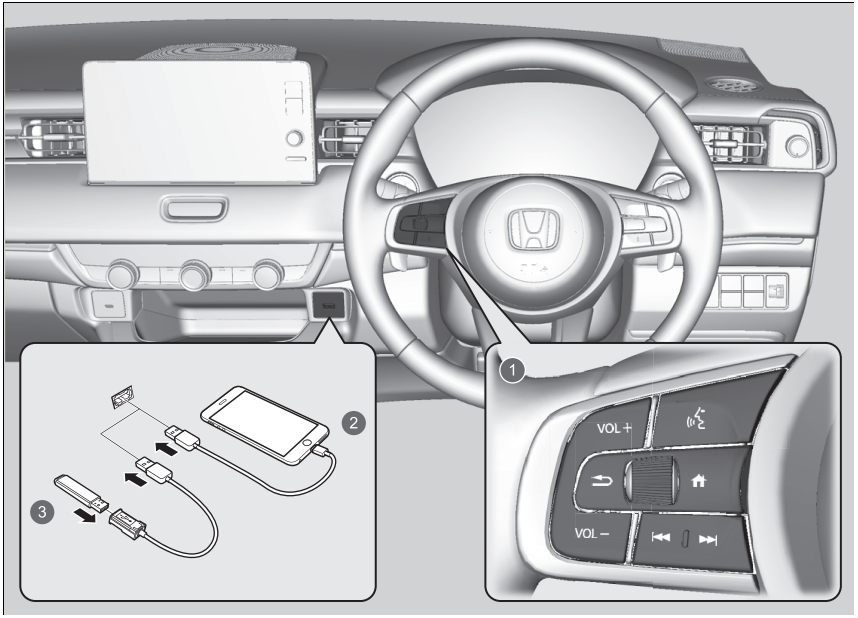
Audio System..... 274
Display Audio*..... 276
Audio Error Messages* 363
General Information on the Audio System* 364
Refuel Recommend*..... 374

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System*

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)* service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

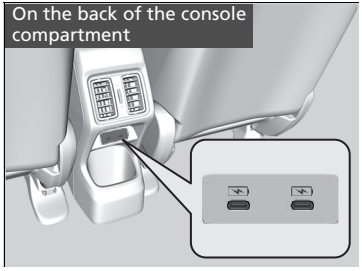
You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.



❶ Remote Controls
❷ iPod
❸ USB Flash Drive

* Not available on all models

USB Ports*



■ **USB charging port ( )**

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports*

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

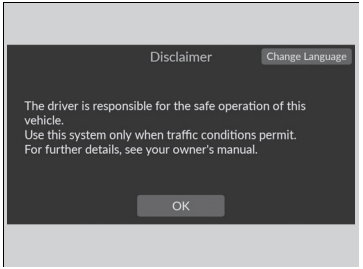
The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

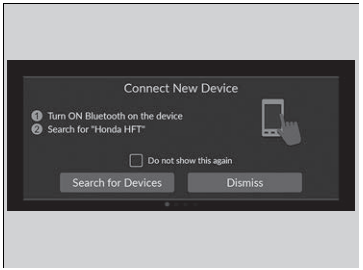
Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the disclaimer will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

- ▶ If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

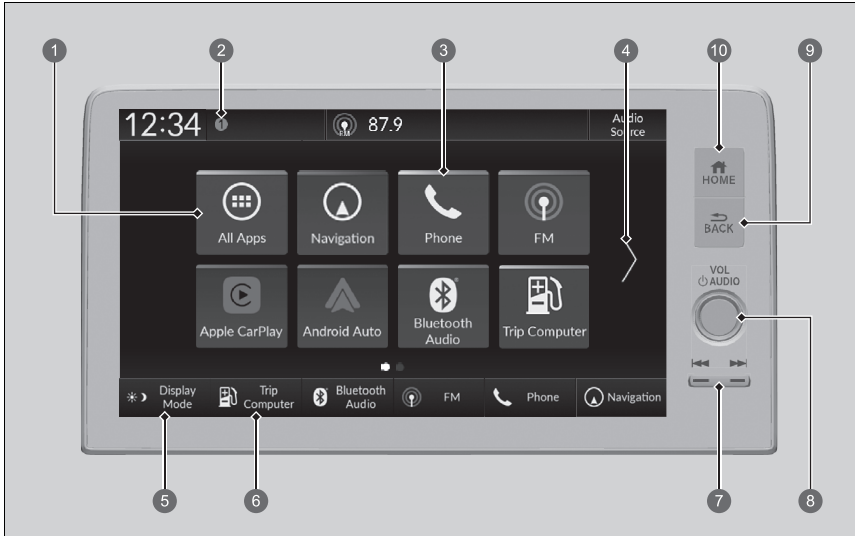
1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
   - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

 * Not available on all models

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



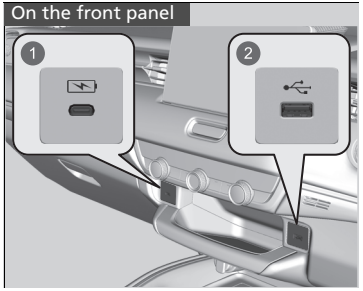
❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ **Display Mode** Icon
❻ Mode Change Switch Icons
❼ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❽ **VOL**/ ⏻ **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❾ BACK (Back) Button
❿ HOME (Home) Button

Continued

All Apps: Displays all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

■ USB Ports

On the front panel



❶ Only for charging devices
❷ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones

■ USB charging/connector port ( )

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ USB charging port ( )

The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

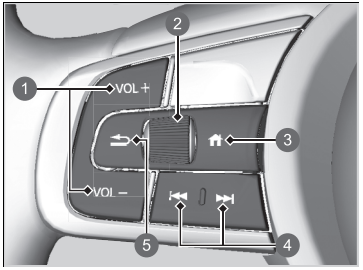
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

Continued

■ Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ **VOL** ＋**/VOL** －(Volume) Buttons
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ (Home) Button
❹ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❺ ⮌ (Back) Button

VOL ＋**/VOL** －**(Volume) Buttons**
Press VOL ＋**:** To increase the volume.
Press VOL －**:** To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the ⮌ (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
FM/AM/DAB*/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- When listening to the radio
  Press |▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀|: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀|: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous song.

* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Audio/Information Screen

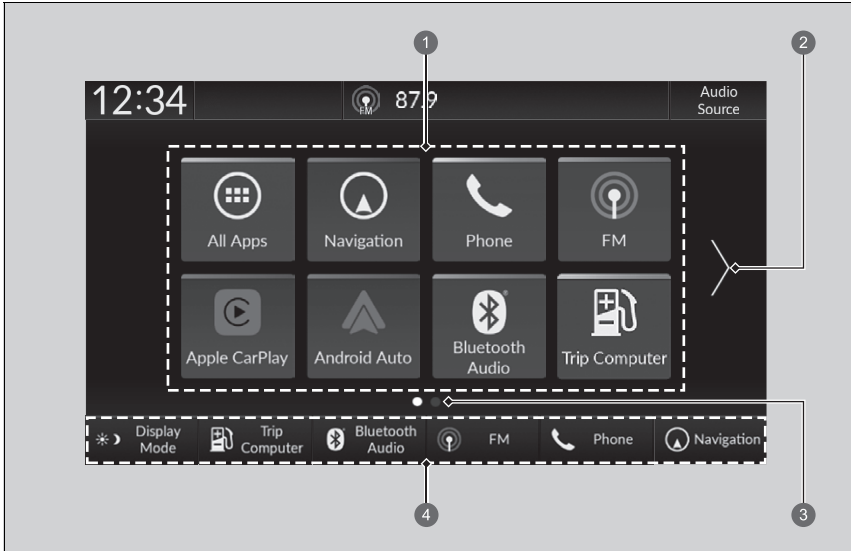
Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

■ App Shortcut Function



❶ App Shortcut Icons
❷ Arrow
❸ Page Indicator
❹ Mode Change Switches

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

App Shortcut Function

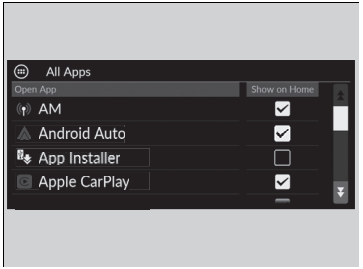
The home screen can contain up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

Continued

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 343

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 343

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

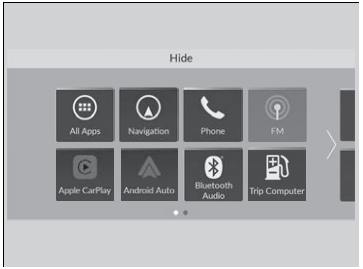
To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.

❶ Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

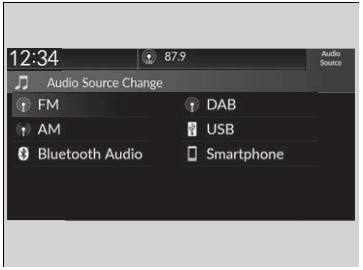
■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

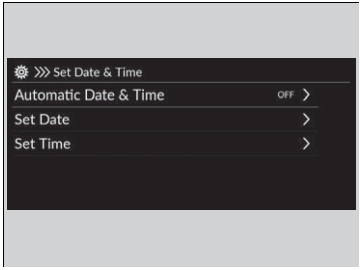
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

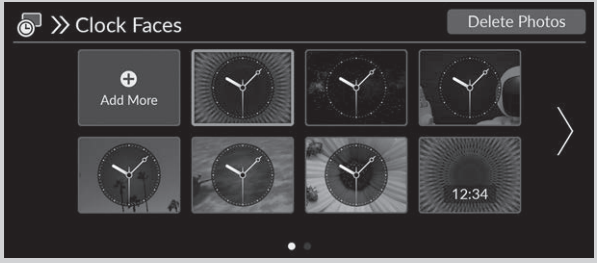
The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours, and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
System P. 331

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



■ Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 279

2. Press the HOME button.

3. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

4. Select **Settings**.

5. Select **Clock Faces**.

6. Select **Add More**.
▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive is displayed on the list.

7. Select a desired picture to import.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.

8. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.

9. Select **Transfer**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

Continued

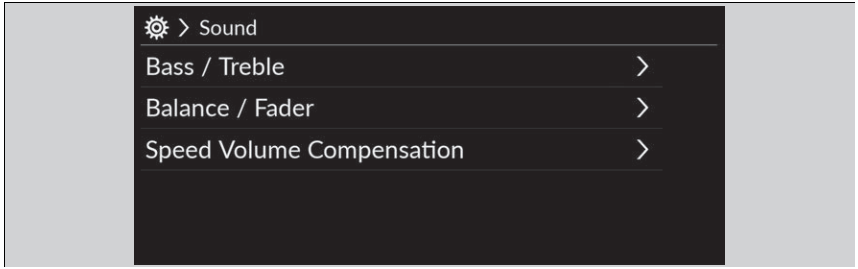
■ **Select clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen with which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ **Delete clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select an audio source.
2. Select **Sound**.
3. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

Adjusting the Sound

The **Speed Volume Compensation** (SVC) adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select (Display Mode).

- ▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.
- ▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.
- ▶ Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the HOME or BACK button.
- ▶ Select to switch between the Day and Night mode.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

Features

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device.

Models with TCU

The audio system's firmware can be also updated with the telematics control unit (TCU) through the subscription-based service.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 288

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that requires login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:

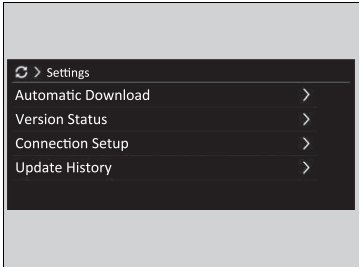
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Continued

■ System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Update History**

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

■ **Connection setup**

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Connection Setup**.

5. Select **OK**.

6. Select an access point from the network list.

▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.

7. Enter the password.

▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.

8. Select **Connect**.

■ **View the update history**

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

■ How to Update Wirelessly

■ Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

■ How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   USB Ports P. 279
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

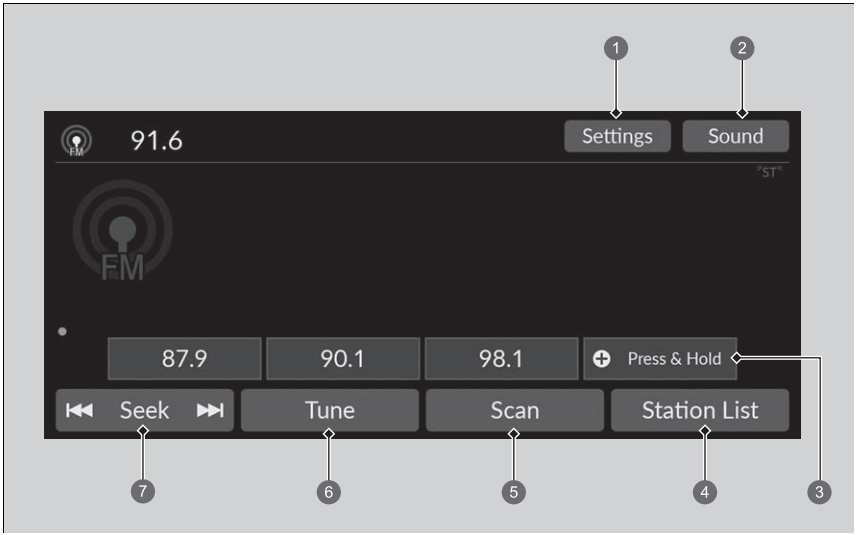
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   USB Ports P. 279
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM/AM Radio



❶ **Settings Icon**
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Station List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Tune Icon**
❼ **Seek Icon**

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 280

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

Continued

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 293

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Allows use of the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Settings*

Changes the RDS settings.

1. Select **Settings**.

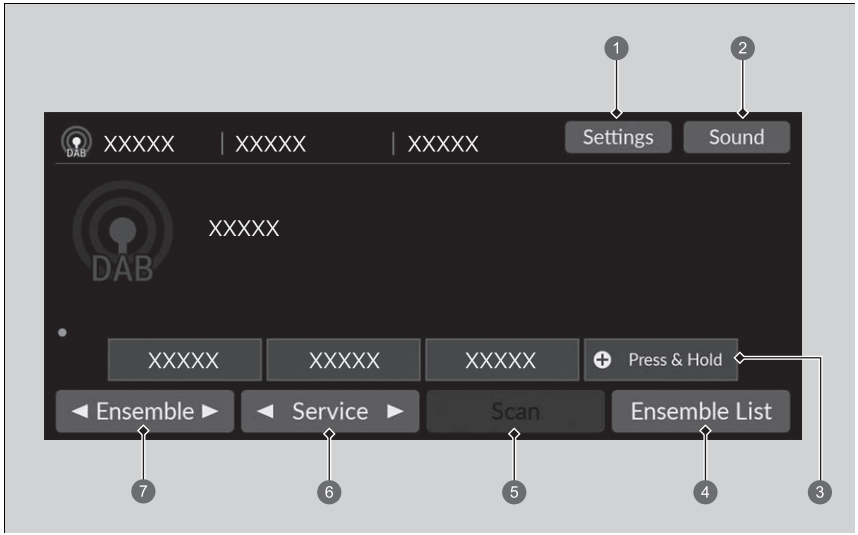
2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF***1)

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



❶ **Settings Icon**
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Ensemble List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Service Icons**
❼ **Ensemble Icons**

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ or ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

■ Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
Audio Remote Controls P. 280

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
Adjusting the Sound P. 293

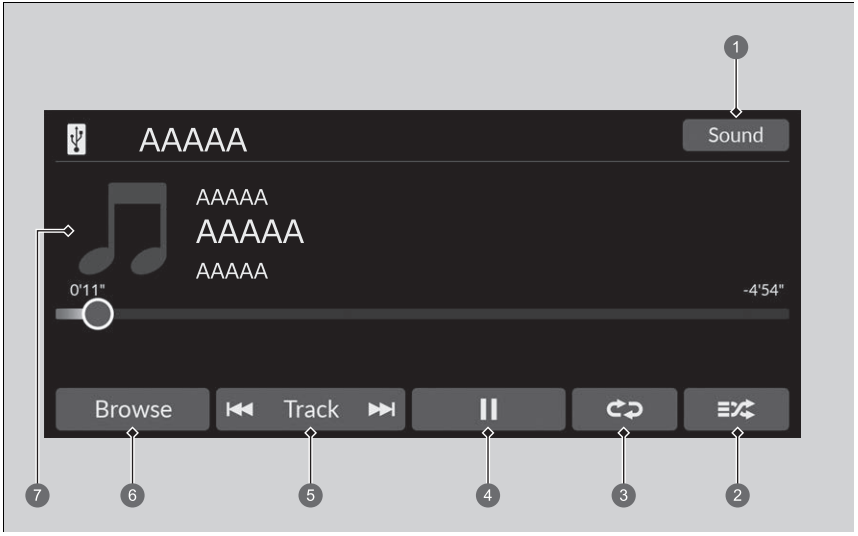
■ Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 279



1. **Sound Icon**
2. **Shuffle Icon**
3. **Repeat Icon**
4. **Play/Pause Icon**
5. **Track Icons**
6. **Browse Icon**
7. **Cover Art**

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 363

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category.

3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued

■ How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

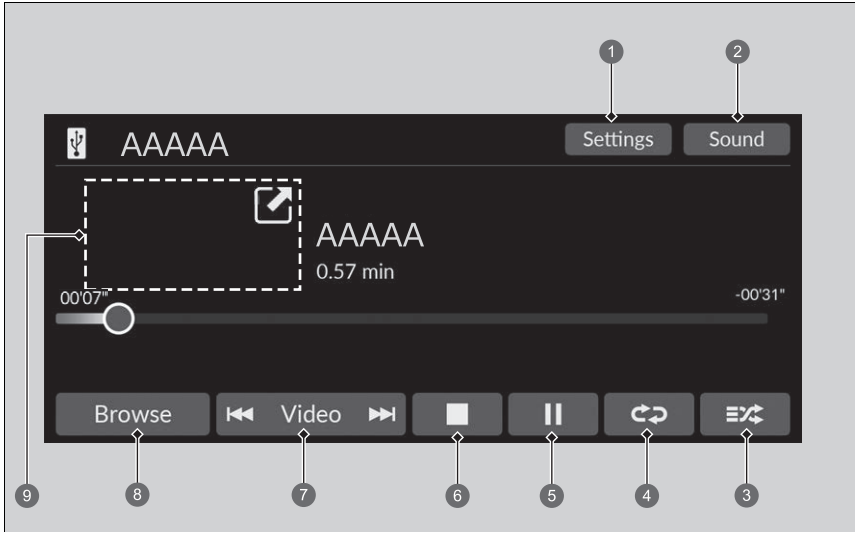
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 293

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 279



❶ **Settings Icon***
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Random Icon**
❹ **Repeat Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Stop Icon***
❼ **Track*/Video* Icons**
❽ **Browse Icon**
❾ **Cover Art*** (Playing a music)/
Mini Player* (Playing a video)

Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System*** P. 364

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 363

 * Not available on all models

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

When playing a video file*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

How to Change a File

Track*/Video* Icons

You can select or to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 293

■ Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Select **Settings**.

2. Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness**/**Contrast**/**Black Level**/**Colour**/**Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original**/**Normal***1/**Full**/**Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right***1/**Upper left**/**Lower right**/**Lower left**/**OFF**)

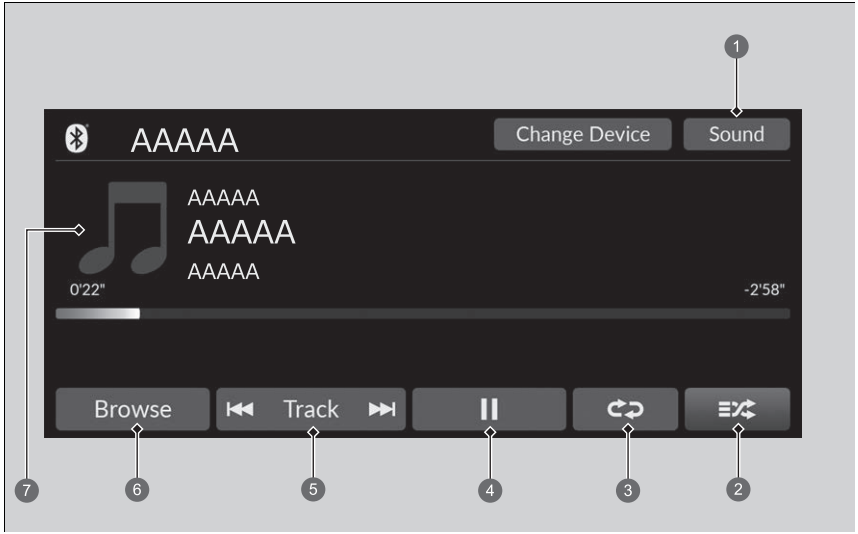
*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 351



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 351

Continued

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat group): Repeats the current group.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.
Adjusting the Sound P. 293

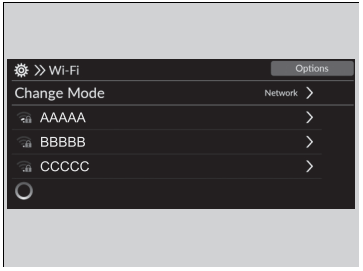
Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
   ▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
   ▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
   System Updates P. 295
8. Select **Connect**.

■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

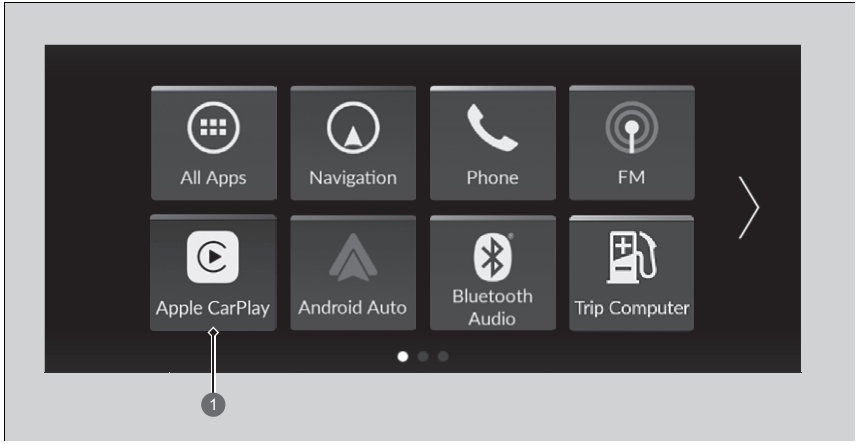
You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
Status Area P. 288

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 279



1 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

➡ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 321

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

The following items are only representative examples. More information on displayed applications can be found on your screen.

- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

Only initialise Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
➡ **USB Ports** P. 279
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351
5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

Wireless Apple CarPlay and Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351
7. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351
7. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Continued

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel**

1. Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.

2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

3. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

4. Select **Connect**.

5. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.

2. Select **OK**.

▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone System.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

4. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

5. Select **Connect**.

6. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

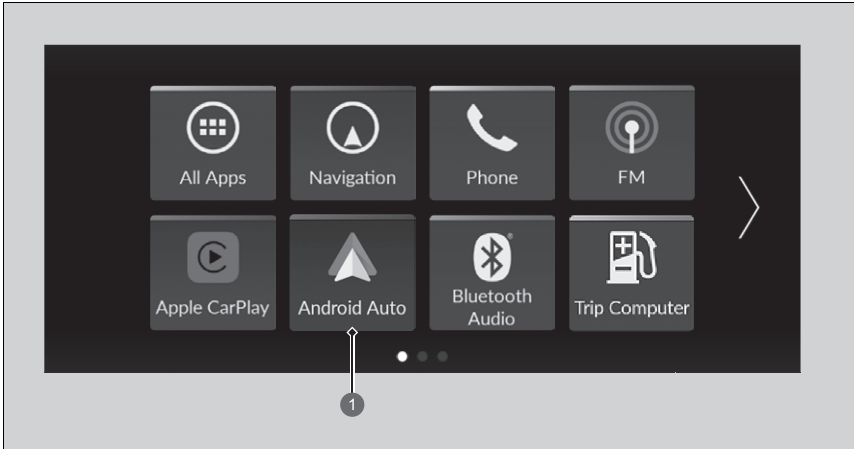
- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

USB Ports P. 279
Auto Pairing Connection P. 328



1 Android Auto

Android Auto™

The images shown here (designs, specifications, etc.) may differ from what is displayed on your screen.

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

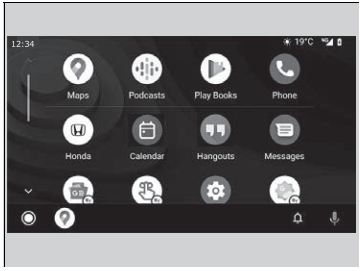
Phone Setup P. 351

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Android Auto Menu

The following items are only representative examples. More information on displayed applications can be found on your screen.



- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Continued

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB port using the USB cable.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 279

▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.

2. Select **Yes**.

▶ If you do not want to connect Android Auto, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable to the USB Port

Only initialise Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

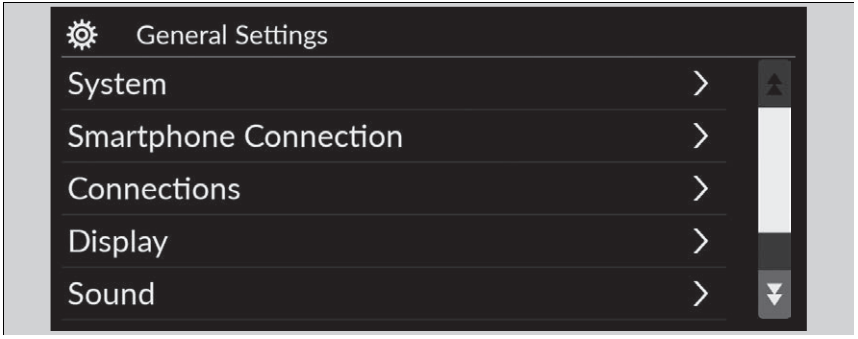
For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** ➡ P. 331
- **Smartphone Connection** ➡ P. 333
- **Connections** ➡ P. 334
- **Display** ➡ P. 335
- **Sound** ➡ P. 335
- **Camera** ➡ P. 336

Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

■ **System**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Select **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON***1**/OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 290	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 290	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON***1**/OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time*		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY***1**/ YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H***1**/24-H**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/ information screen language separately.	**English**[*1] Some Languages may not be available in all regions. Check the audio/ information screen for available options.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal**[*1]
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Refuel Recommend		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off. ➡ **Refuel Recommend*** P. 374	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 343	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ **Smartphone Connection**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351	—

Continued

■ **Connections**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network**[*1]/ **Smartphone**[*2]/**OFF**
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
	Setup	**Network SSID**	Sets the network name.	—
		Security	Displays the network security.	—
		Password	Sets required password to connect Wi-Fi device to the network.	—
		Wi-Fi Band	Displays the Wi-Fi band.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. **Phone Setup** P. 351	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 351	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

■ **Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode*1	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode. ➡ **Display Setup** P. 294	—
Night Mode		
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

*1:Default Setting

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 293	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Balance / Fader			
Speed Volume Compensation			

■ **Camera**

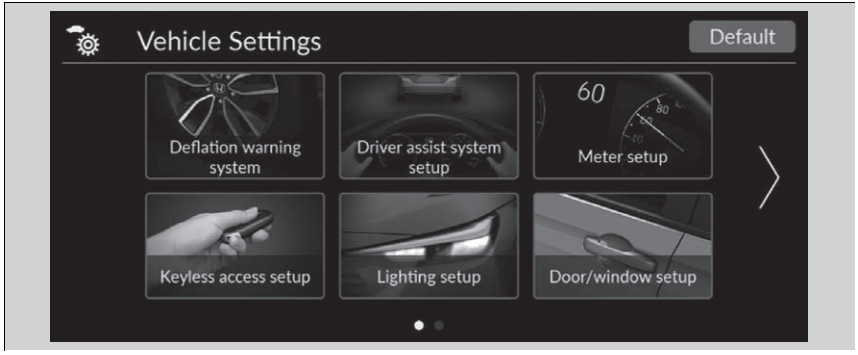
Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 533	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 533	**ON***1**/OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor*		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor*** P. 529	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation warning system*** ➡ P. 338
- **Driver assist system setup** ➡ P. 338
- **Meter setup** ➡ P. 340
- **Keyless access setup** ➡ P. 341
- **Lighting setup** ➡ P. 341
- **Door/window setup** ➡ P. 342
- **Power tailgate setup*** ➡ P. 342

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

➡ **App Shortcut Function** P. 283

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Deflation warning system***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation warning system	Cancels/calibrates Deflation Warning System. **Deflation Warning System*** P. 422	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ **Driver assist system setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts. **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 433	**Far/Normal*1/Near**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns audible notification on/off when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 461	**ON/OFF*1**
Lead car departure notification system*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system. **Lead Car Departure Notification System*** P. 497	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 453	Singaporean models **Warning only/Early/Normal*1/Delayed** Except Singaporean models **Early/Normal/Delayed*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lane keep assist beep	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* suspend alert beeps on and off. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 478 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 488	**ON/OFF***1
Blind spot information*	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 424	**Audible and visual alert***1/ **Visual alert only**
Traffic sign recognition system display*	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 502	**Display***1/**None**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning*	Enable over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 502	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Meter setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Adjusts outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 129	**-3°C ~ ±0°C***1 **~ +3°C**
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➡ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 135 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 137	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset***1
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➡ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 135 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 137	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset***1
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning, and indicators.	**Max/Mid***1**/Min**
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➡ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 139	**ON***1**/OFF**
Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
Fuel economy unit*	Selects the fuel consumption units.	**km/l***1**/l/100km**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ **Keyless access setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	**Max**[*1]**/Min**
Keyless access light flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Lighting setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam*	Turns auto high beam function on/off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Adaptive driving beam*	Turns adaptive driving beam function on/off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 245	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 208	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 208	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Door/window setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Walk away lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Lock presetting*	Changes the settings for the Lock Presetting function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by remote. ➡ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 174	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Auto folding door mirror*	Selects door mirror auto folding operation.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Remote Window Control*	Changes the settings for the remote window control function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Power tailgate setup***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless open mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime**[*1]**/When unlocked**
Power open by outer handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)**[*1]**/OFF (Manual only)**
Hands free access	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

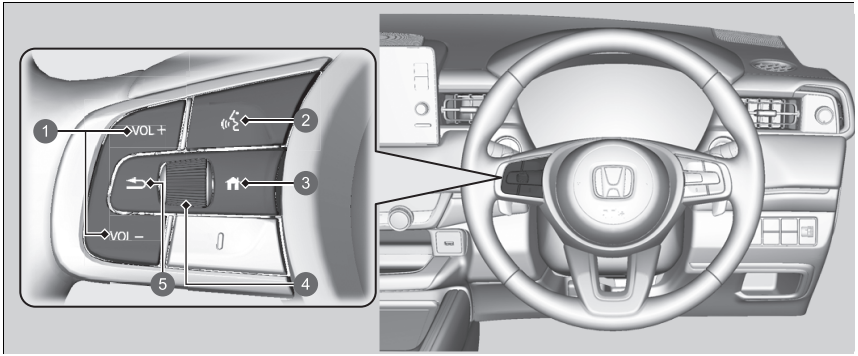
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your mobile phone.

■ HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL** [+]**/VOL** [−] (Volume) Buttons
❷ [talk] (Talk) Button
❸ [home] (Home) Button
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ [back] (Back) Button

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the [talk] button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 356

(Talk) button: Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 361

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

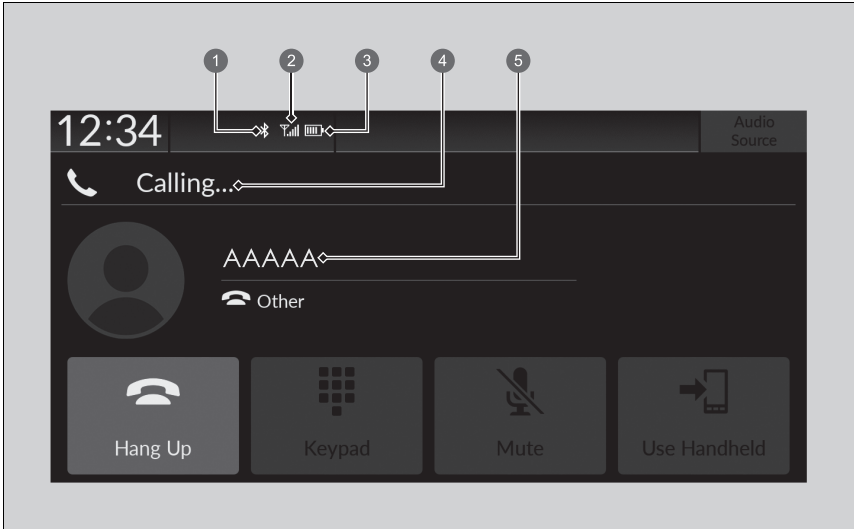
HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

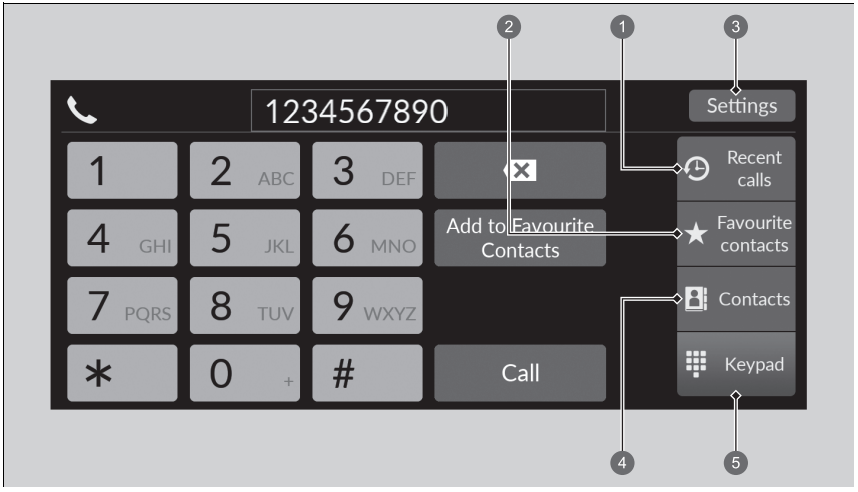
Only previously stored Favourite contacts with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➲ **Favourite Contacts** P. 356

Continued

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



1. **Recent calls**
2. **Favourite contacts**
3. **Settings**
4. **Contacts**
5. **Keypad**

HFT Menus

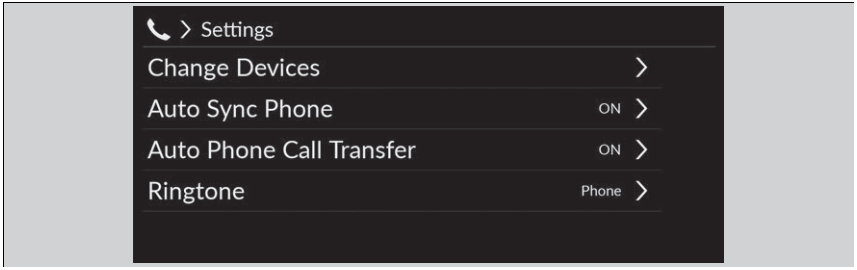
Some functions are limited while driving.

Recent calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
To make a call using the recent calls P. 359
Favourite contacts: Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.
To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry P. 359
Settings: Changes the phone settings.
Phone Settings Screen P. 350
Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
To make a call using the imported phonebook P. 360
Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.
To make a call using a phone number P. 360

Continued

■ Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 351

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

➡ **Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls** P. 354

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

➡ **Automatic Transferring** P. 355

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

➡ **Ringtone** P. 355

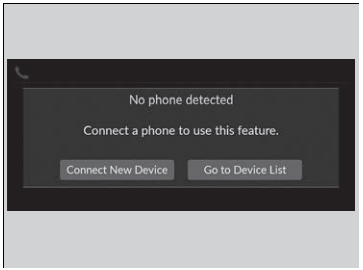
■ Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.

Continued



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

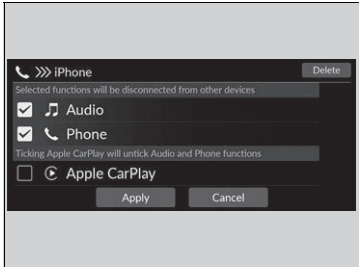
: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
   - ▶ If you want to cancel the automatic *Bluetooth*® connection, uncheck all icons.
6. Select **Apply**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

Continued

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

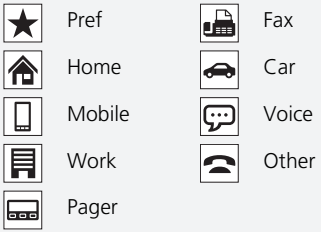
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

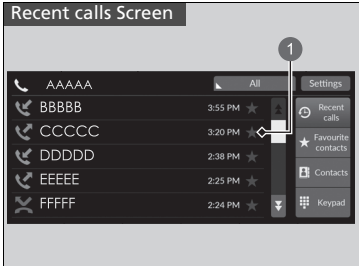
Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Continued

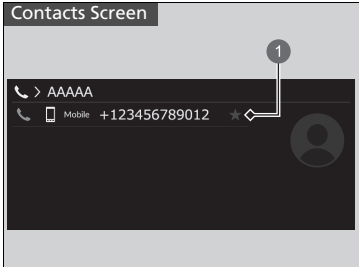
■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen



1 Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

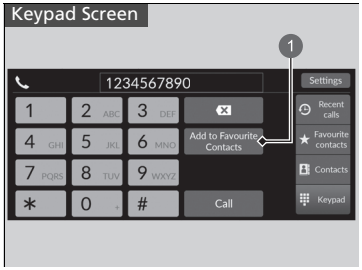
On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

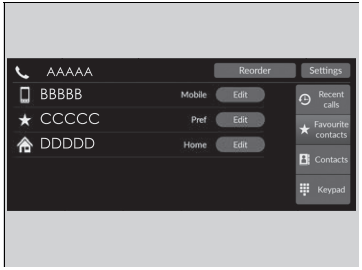
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.
   - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
   - ▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.

Keypad Screen



❶ Add to Favourite Contacts



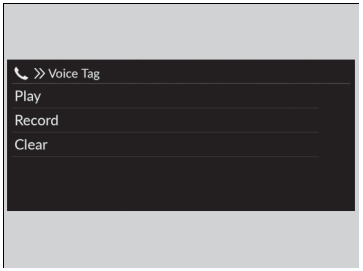
■ To edit a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Continued



■ **To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Favourite Contacts

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**.
▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialling starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialling starts automatically.

Making a Call

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 356

Any voice-tagged Favourite contacts entry can be dialled by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Continued

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
   ▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
   ▶ Dialling starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

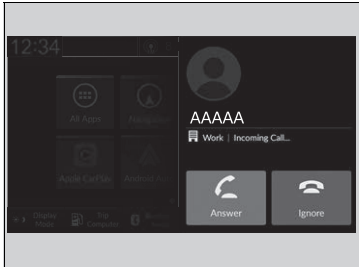
➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 356

To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged Favourite contacts using voice commands.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 356

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick up the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

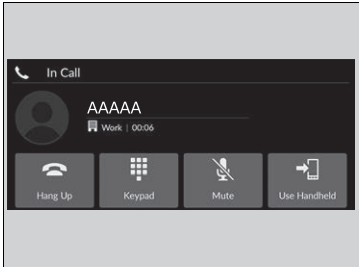
Call Waiting
Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

Continued

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
No response from device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

* Not available on all models

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th to 7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max

■ USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.
  MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

 * Not available on all models

■ Recommended Devices

■ MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

■ AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

Continued

■ **MKV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ **ASF/WMV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select **General Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **About**.
4. Select **Legal Information**.
5. Select **Licence**.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Licence Information

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

■ Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Continued

■ MPEG

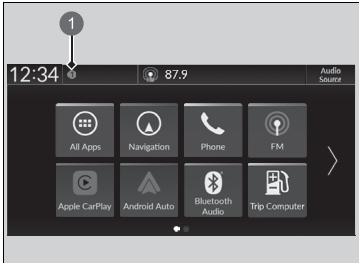
Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

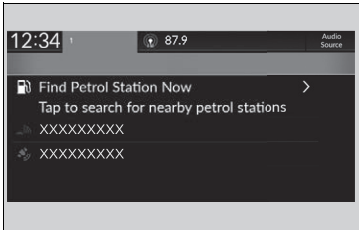
Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for petrol stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.

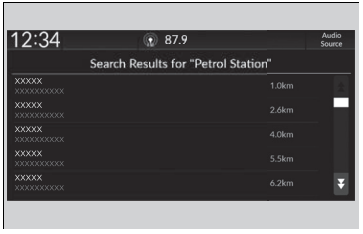


1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.

1 Notification Icon



3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now**.



4. Choose a petrol station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the **Refuel Recommend** function on and off.

Customized Features P. 330

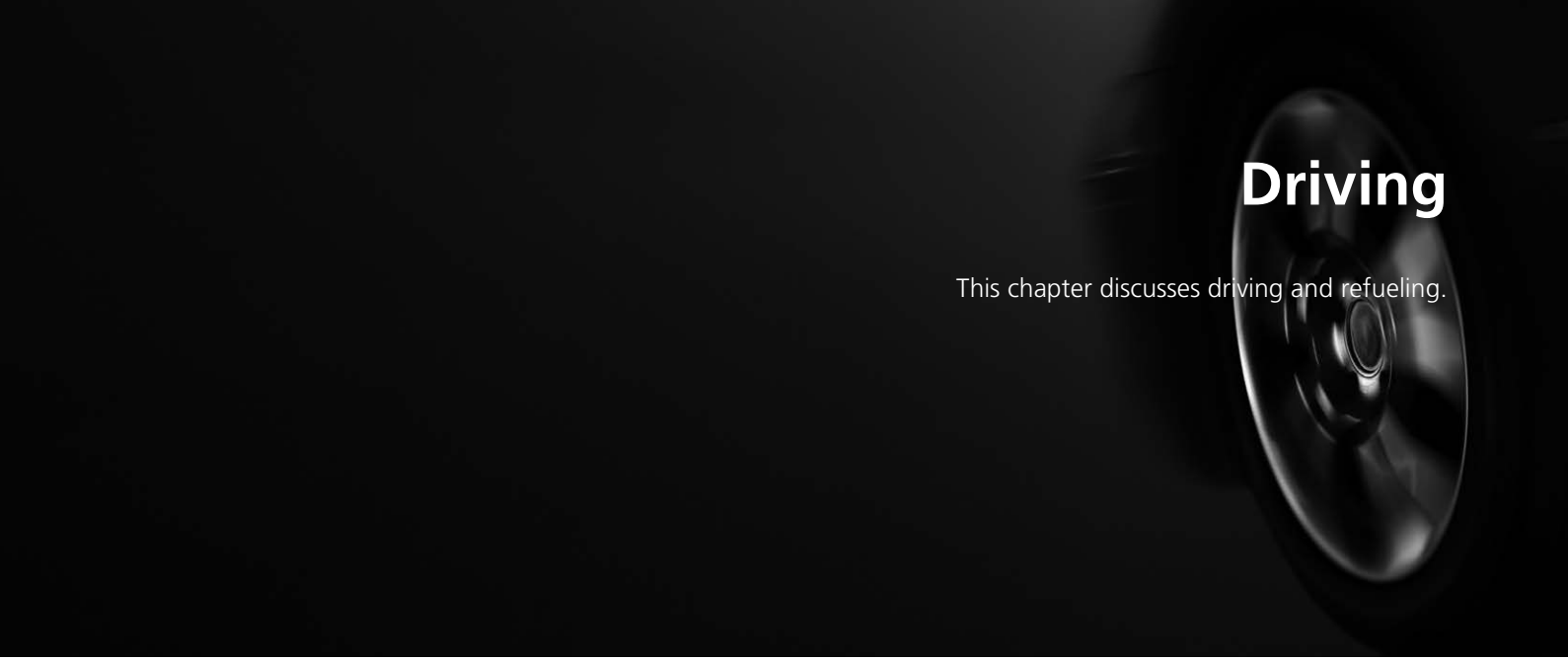
When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the fuel level in the tank is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** or put more than 5 litres of petrol into the fuel tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select **OFF** in the settings for **Refuel Recommend**.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

* Not available on all models



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 376
Towing a Trailer 380
Off-road Guidelines 381
When Driving
- Turning on the Power 383
- Precautions While Driving 389
- Transmission 391
- Shifting 392
- Deceleration Paddle Selector 394
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 397
- Drive Mode Switch 398
- Hill Descent Control System 401
- Adjustable Speed Limiter* 403
- Intelligent Speed Limiter* 409
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 416
- Agile Handling Assist 418

Taiwanese models
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ... 419

Except Taiwanese models
- Deflation Warning System* 422
- Blind Spot Information System* 424
- High Voltage Battery 429

Honda SENSING 430
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) .. 433
- Low Speed Braking Control* 447
- Road Departure Mitigation System ... 453
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow .. 461
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 478

Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models
- Traffic Jam Assist 488
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* . 497
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* 502
- Front Wide View Camera 507
- Sonar Sensors* 509

Braking 510
Parking Your Vehicle 521
Multi-View Rear Camera* 533
Refueling 535
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 539

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 577
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 379
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 232
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 241
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 228
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 227

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.
➡ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 214

Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 52
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 108

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 656

For some models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 656

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement; however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
  Load Limit P. 379
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-road Guidelines

⚠WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

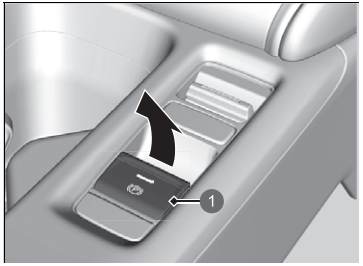
Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 44
Precautions While Driving P. 389

Avoiding Trouble

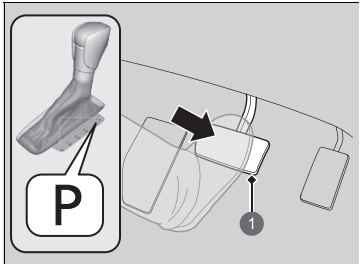
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Turning on the Power



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



1 Brake Pedal

2. Check that the transmission is in [P], then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in [N], it is safer to start it in [P].

Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when turning the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

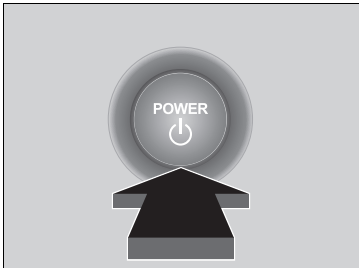
If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 625

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn on the power system.
If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

Continued



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

❶ **READY** indicator

4. Check the **READY** indicator.
- ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
- ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.
  Indicators P. 108

Turning on the Power

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.
You can start driving with the **READY** indicator on.
If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.
READY Indicator P. 113

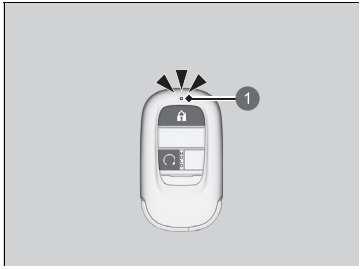
The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.
Immobilizer System P. 195

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely turn the power system on using the keyless remote.

■ To turn the power system on



Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [🚗] button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

❶ LED: Blinks when any button is pressed.

If the power system turned on successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the power system is not turned on, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [⟳] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

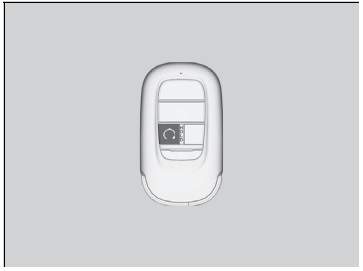
Remote Engine Start*

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the driver information interface.
  Settings* P. 146
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.

* Not available on all models

■ To turn the power system off



Press and hold the button for one second.

If the power system turns off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.

When the remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The power system will not be turned off.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start*

The power system may be turned off while it is on if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the keyless remote.
- The power system is turned off by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the power system is on, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.*
- The climate control system is activated in previously selected mode.*

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button P. 225

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the button* on the keyless remote

Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button.

When the power system is turned on in any case

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
   ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
   ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 510

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into D, B when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to P.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

* Not available on all models

Starting to Drive

When the power system is turned on using the button* on the keyless remote

The power system is turned off when the transmission is taken out of P before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.
Make sure to check if the **READY** indicator is on before you start to drive.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Precautions While Driving

■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the motor or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 44
Precautions While Driving P. 389

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

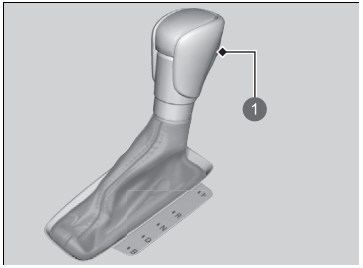
■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions



❶ Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used for normal driving.

- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is on.

B Drive (B)

- Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used.

Shifting

⚠WARNING

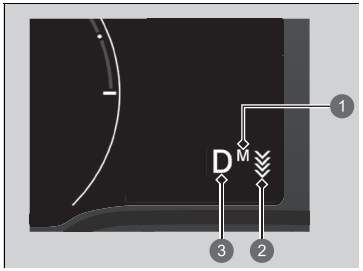
The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

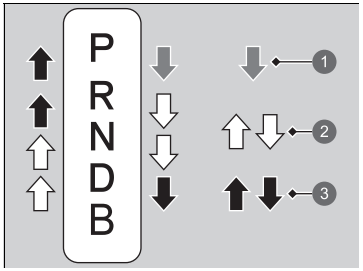
The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in N. Change the shift position to D or R with the brake pedal depressed.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in P.

Shift Operation



❶ **M** Indicator
❷ Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
❸ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)



❶ Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
❷ Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
❸ Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

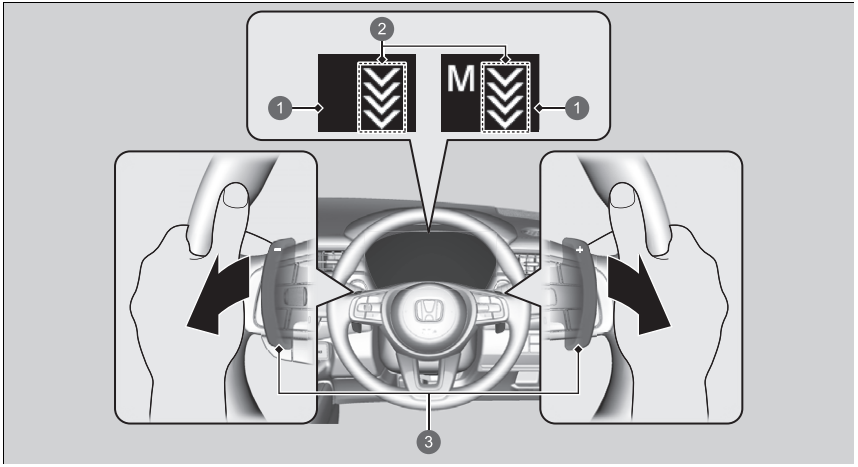
When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures –30°C, there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.
When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help to maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

■ Deceleration Paddle Selector Operation



❶ Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
❷ Deceleration Stage
❸ Paddle Selector

Deceleration Paddle Selector

⚠CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

■ When the shift position is in D

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will increase temporarily, and the stage will appear on the gauge.
The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge will disappear when you drive at a constant speed or slow to a near stop.

■ When the shift position is in D and drive mode is SPORT

If you choose **SPORT** mode, the rate of deceleration will increase and the stage along with **M** will appear.
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, change out of **SPORT** mode. When cancelled, the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge disappears.

■ When the shift position is in B

If you change the shift position to B, the rate of deceleration will increase and the stage along with **M** will appear.
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, change the shift position to D and change out of **SPORT** mode. When cancelled, the deceleration paddle selector indicator on the gauge disappears.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.

If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

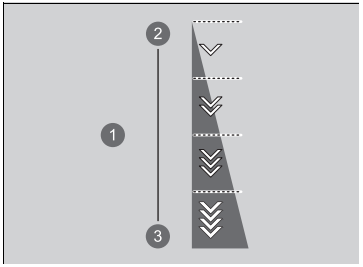
If either paddle selector is operated, while driving, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

Continued

■ Common operations

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the + selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the − selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.



Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

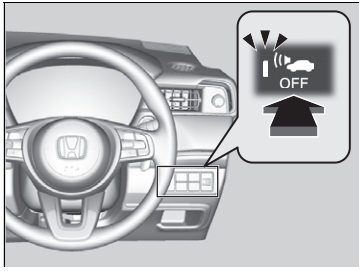
▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

❶ Deceleration Stage
❷ Decrease
❸ Increase

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 20 km/h*1/25 km/h*2 or less.

■ Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button*



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

*1: Except Taiwanese models
*2: Taiwanese models

* Not available on all models

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

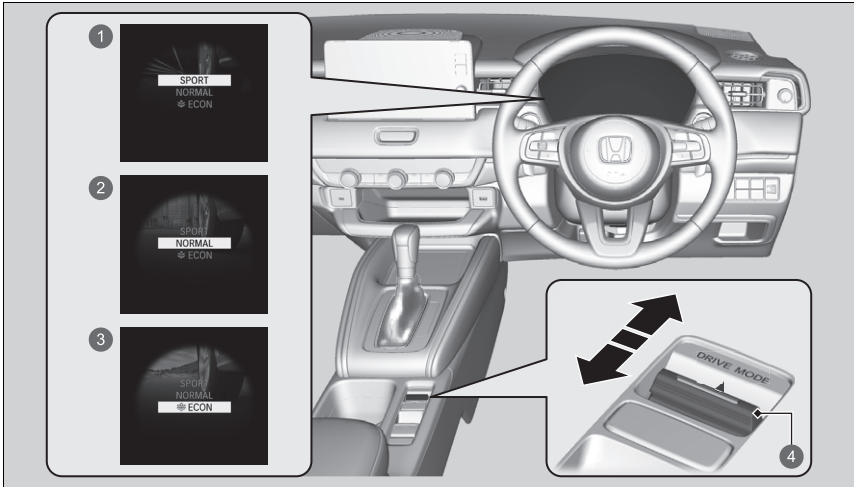
Models with Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button

The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

Drive Mode Switch

Press the drive mode switch to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.

■ Selecting the Drive Mode

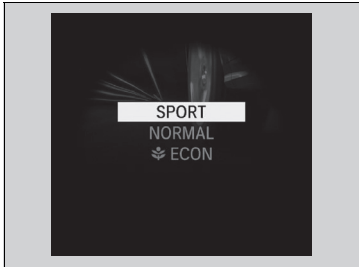


❶ **SPORT** Mode
❷ **NORMAL** Mode
❸ **ECON** Mode
❹ Drive Mode Switch

Drive Mode Switch

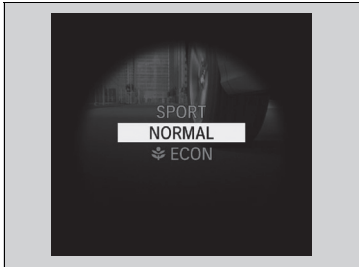
The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.
If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

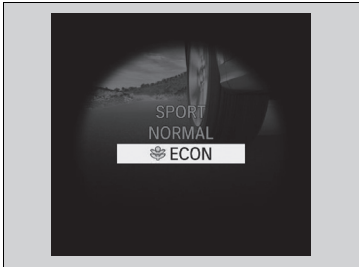
NORMAL Mode



Optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

Continued

■ ECON Mode



Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

■ Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Mode	Next Mode
SPORT	**NORMAL**
NORMAL	**NORMAL**
ECON	**ECON**

ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle will be slower to accelerate.

Hill Descent Control System

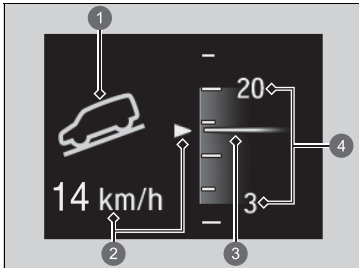
When driving down hills where regenerative braking is not enough to decelerate the vehicle, this system helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed without needing to depress the brake pedal.

■ Hill Descent Control Operating Conditions

The system operates under the following conditions.

- Driving at a speed between about 3-20 km/h.
- Driving downhill.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed.

■ Driver Information Interface Display



❶ The system's operating status
- Green: Activated
- White: Standby

❷ Vehicle speed display
- White: Set speed
- Grey: Current speed
  ▶ Blinks when the vehicle speed is above the operating speed.

❸ Current speed

❹ Operating range of set speed

Hill Descent Control System

⚠WARNING

Hill descent control cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in every situation.

When driving down a very steep hill or on slippery road surfaces, the vehicle may not be able to maintain the vehicle speed and could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Since Hill Descent Control is not designed to increase the limits of vehicle performance, the driver must always be aware of road surface conditions and drive safely.

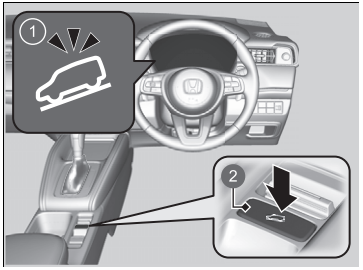
The brake lights automatically come on while the system is in operation.

The system may not operate when driving down a gentle slope. Check the Hill Descent Control indicator to see if the system is in operation.

The system may activate even when not driving downhill, such as when the vehicle leans while driving over uneven surfaces.

Continued

■ How to Operate Hill Descent Control



❶ Hill Descent Control System Indicator
❷ (Hill Descent Control) Button

■ To turn the system on

When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h, press the button to turn the system on.

▶ The system goes into standby mode, and the Hill Descent Control System indicator (white) comes on.

When all the working conditions are met, the system activates, and the vehicle begins to maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill.

▶ The Hill Descent Control System indicator (green) comes on when operating.

■ To adjust the set speed

Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed within the operating range. The vehicle speed at which you release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will be the set speed.

■ To turn the system off

Press the button to turn the system off.

How to Operate Hill Descent Control

Using the system repeatedly for a long time may cause the brakes to heat up and make the system go into standby mode temporarily.

Hill Descent Control is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if it was turned on the last time you drove the vehicle.

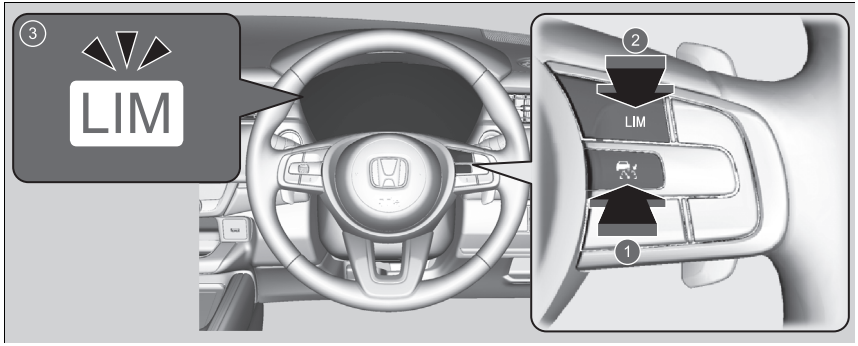
The pedals may vibrate or you may hear the system working when in operation.

To turn the system off

When the vehicle speed is about 60 km/h or more, the system turns off automatically.

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 250 km/h.



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
❸ **The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

▶Adjustable Speed Limiter*

⚠WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations.
It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

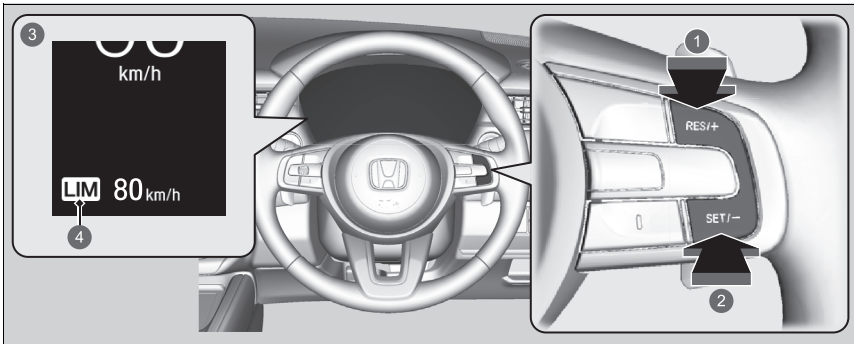
When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.
-Adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow
-Intelligent speed limiter

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To Set the Speed Limit



❶ **RES/+** Button
❷ **SET/–** Button
❸ On when the adjustable speed limiter is set.
❹ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **SET/–** button or the **RES/+** button when you reach the desired speed.
  The moment you release the **SET/–** button or the **RES/+** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

To Set the Speed Limit

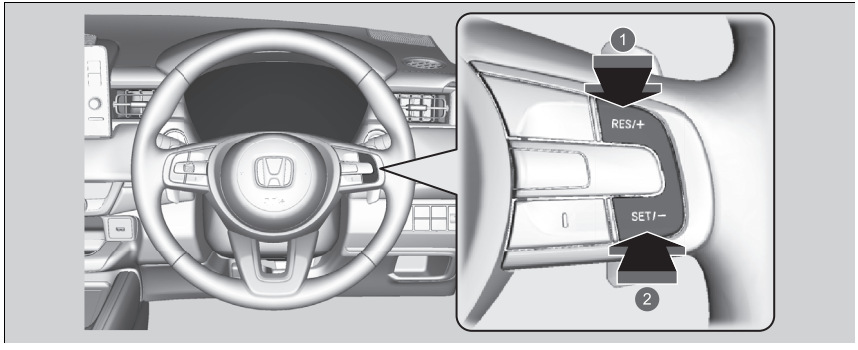
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** buttons on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Continued

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.

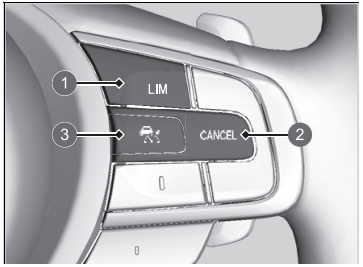
▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel



❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

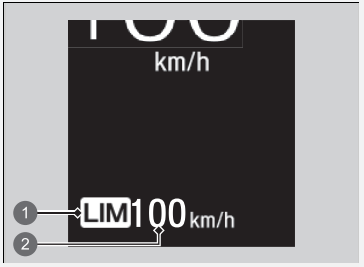
To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Resuming the prior set speed:
Press the **CANCEL** button to display the prior set speed (grey) and press the **RES/+** button to resume the prior set speed.
If you are driving at a speed faster than the prior set speed (grey), the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed by pressing the **RES/+** button.
If you press the **RES/+** button when no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

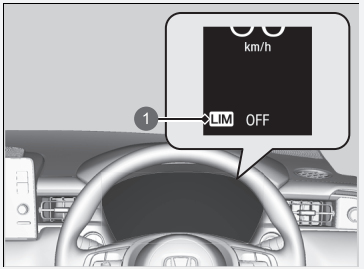


❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Continued

To Cancel

If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.



1 Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 502

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

⚠WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

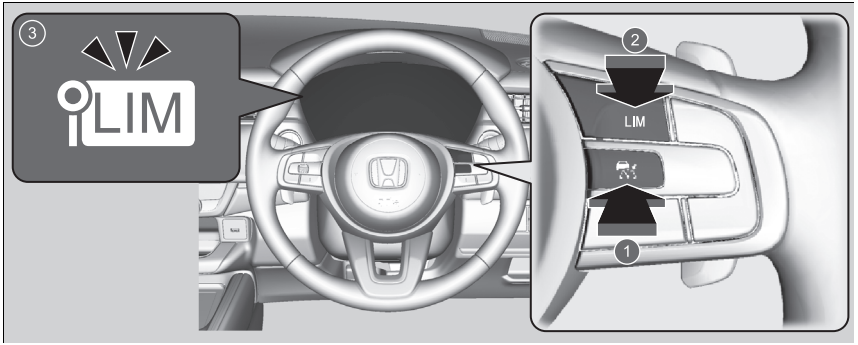
Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 502

* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
❸ **The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:
To cancel
- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily
- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

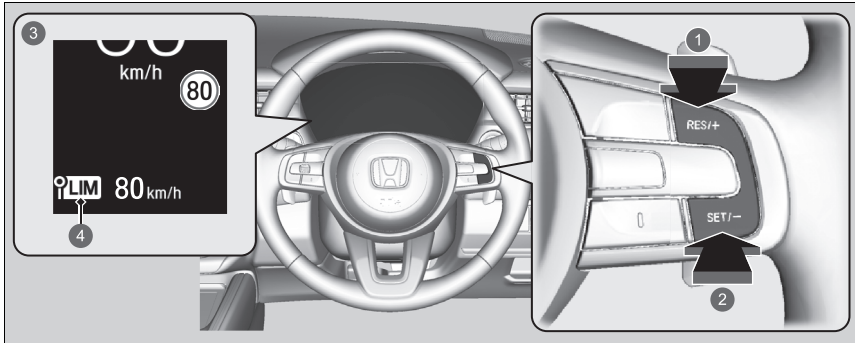
The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

 * Not available on all models

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+** Button
2. **SET/–** Button
3. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
4. Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- The moment you release the **SET/–** button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h, the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

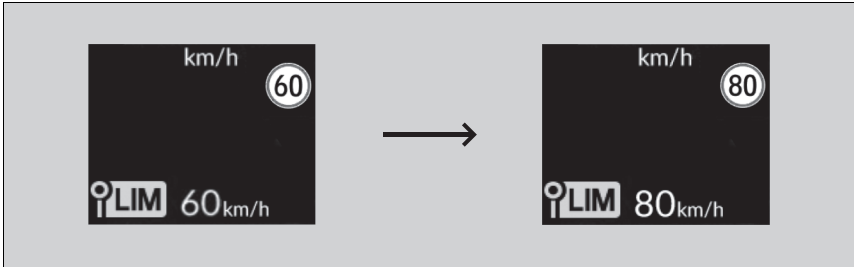
If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more.

* Not available on all models

Continued

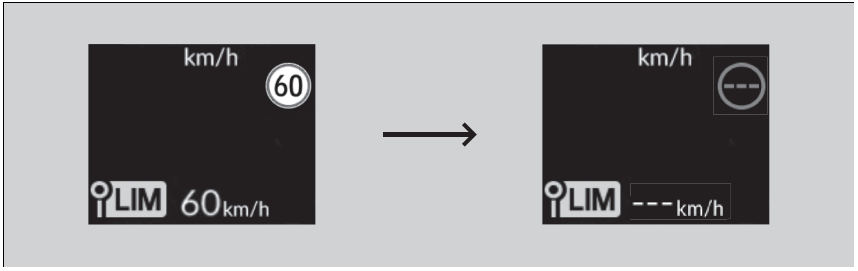
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign**

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



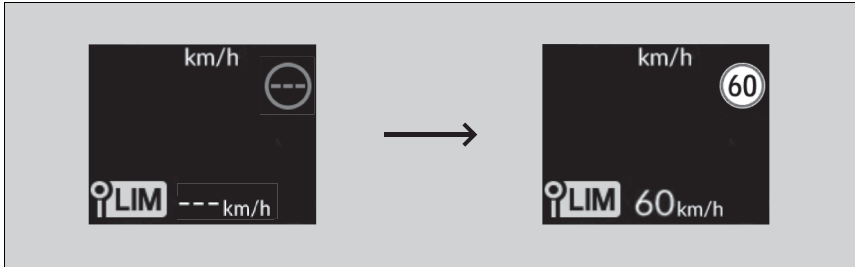
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



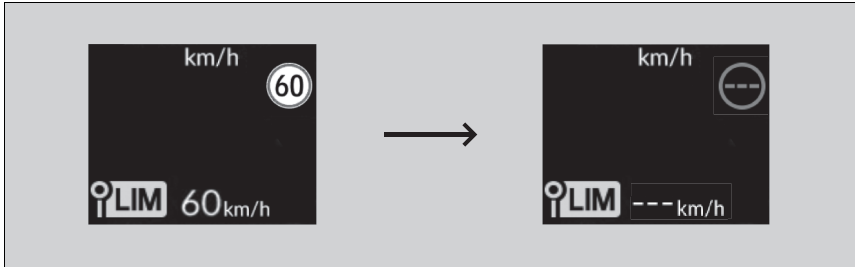
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



■ **When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated**

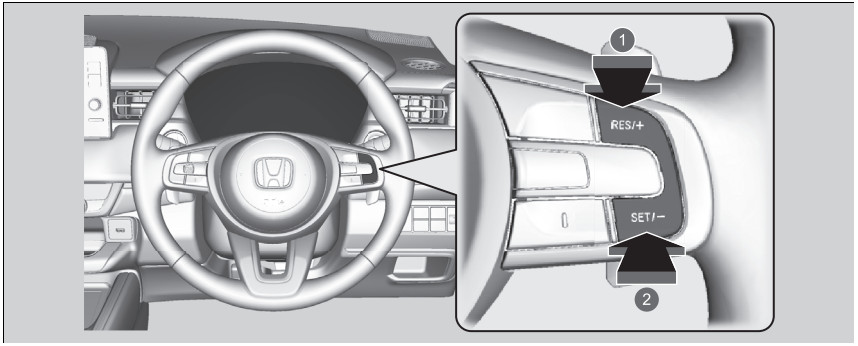
While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



Continued

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

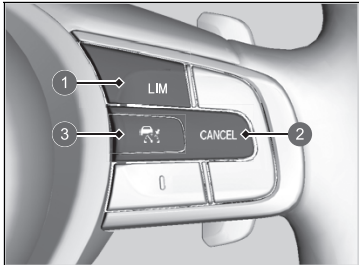
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h.

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

■ To Cancel



❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

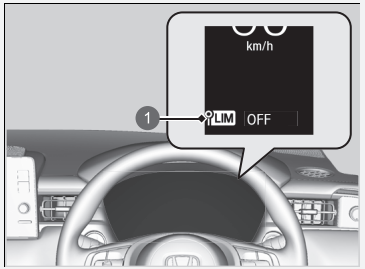
Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



❶ Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

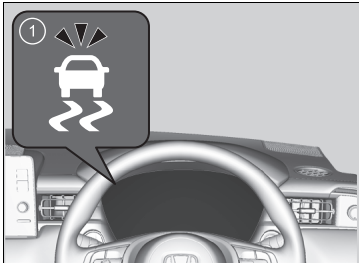
➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 502

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

❶ VSA System Indicator

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

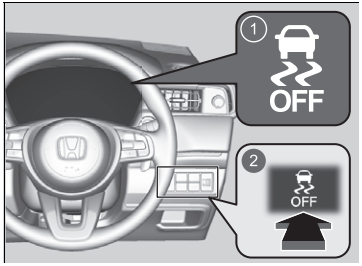
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



❶ VSA **OFF** Indicator
❷ VSA OFF Button

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the VSA OFF (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the VSA OFF button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Taiwanese models

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator

■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  Checking Tyres P. 577

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Continued

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

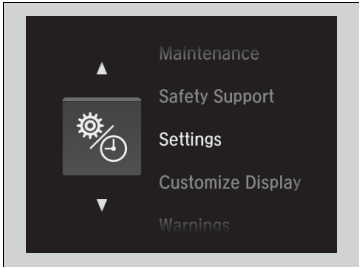
Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

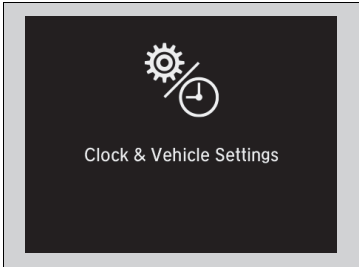
The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 577

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

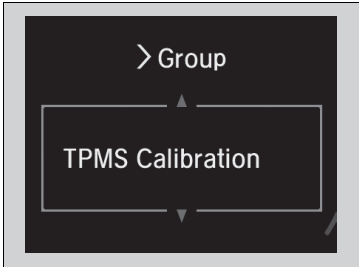


You can calibrate the system from the settings on the driver information interface.

1. Press the [⌂] button to select ⚙ (**Settings**), then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock & Vehicle Settings**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.

4. Press the left selector wheel.

▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

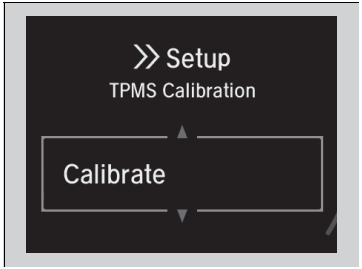
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.

TPMS Calibration

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



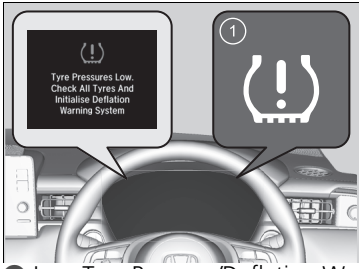
5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **Calibrate**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Except Taiwanese models

Deflation Warning System*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

■ Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  ➡ **Checking Tyres** P. 577

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 577

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

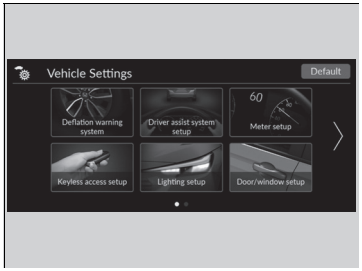
* Not available on all models

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

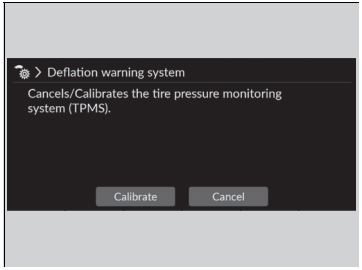
1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the HOME button.

3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.



4. Select **Deflation warning system**.



5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Deflation Warning System*

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains are used.

Deflation Warning System Calibration

The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h.
During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

* Not available on all models

Blind Spot Information System*

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Blind Spot Information System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the blind spot information system has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

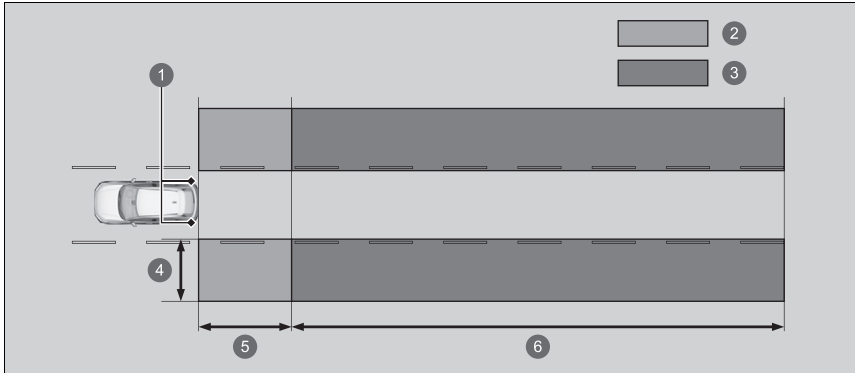
- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

* Not available on all models

How the System Works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h or above.

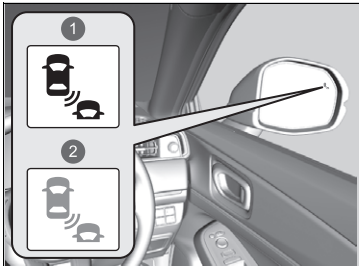


❶ Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
❷ Alert Zone 1
❸ Alert Zone 2
Alert zone range
❹ Approx. 0.5 ~ 3 m from vehicle side.
❺ Approx. 3 m from rear bumper.
❻ Approx. 3 ~ 25 m behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

Continued

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind spot information system alert indicator: Located on the outside door mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the Blind spot information indicator is on.

▶ The beeper sounds three times.

Blind Spot Information System*

For proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the **Blind Spot Information Not Available** appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

 * Not available on all models

■ Blind Spot Information System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 131

➔ **Safety Support** P. 143

The blind spot information system will stay on the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

Blind Spot Information System*

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The blind spot information system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

■ The functions that do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➡ P. 433
- Low Speed Braking Control* ➡ P. 447
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P. 453
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ➡ P. 497
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* ➡ P. 502
- Auto High-Beam* ➡ P. 215
- Blind Spot Information System* ➡ P. 424
- Parking Sensor System* ➡ P. 523
- Cross Traffic Monitor* ➡ P. 529

■ The functions that require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➡ P. 461
- Intelligent Speed Limiter* ➡ P. 409
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 478

Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

- Traffic Jam Assist ➡ P. 488

Honda SENSING

Thai models

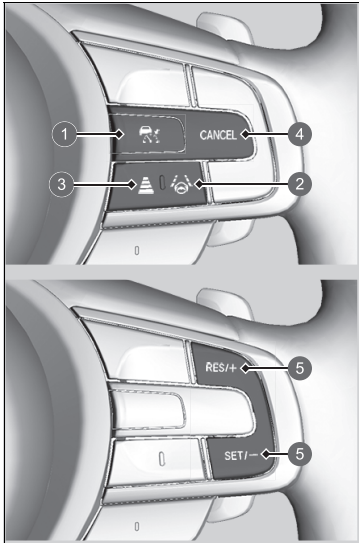
CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.
This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

* Not available on all models

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*



1 Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

2 LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*.
Or press to cancel these system.

3 Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

4 CANCEL Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

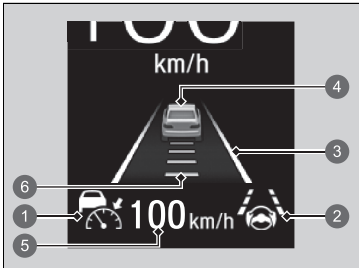
5 RES/+ and SET/– Buttons
Press **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **SET/–** button to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) and Traffic Jam Assist*.



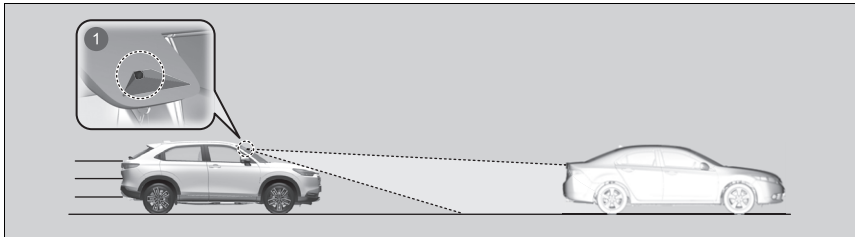
1. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
2. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Green: The system is operating.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
3. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
   - White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Green Lines: The system is operating.
   - Amber Lines: Lane departure is detected.
4. Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.
5. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
   - White: Set Vehicle Speed
   - Grey: Prior Set Speed
6. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

 * Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle).
The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

■ How the system works



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 438

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

How the system works

The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 438

Continued

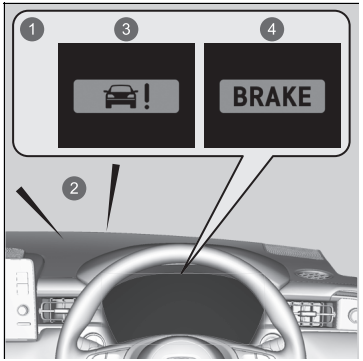
The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
  - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

■ **When the system activates**



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

1. Visual Alerts
2. Audible Alert
3. Except Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models
4. Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models

You can change the distance (**Far**/**Normal**/**Near**)* (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**)* between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

➔ **Settings*** P. 146
➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

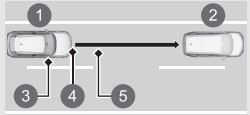
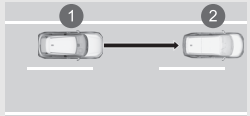
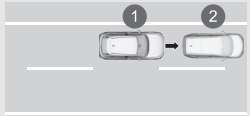
When in **Far*** or **Long***, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near*** or **Short***, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The Visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➡ **Settings*** P. 146 ➡ **Customized Features** P. 330	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Far*** or **Long***
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Near*** or **Short***

* Not available on all models

CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 131
Safety Support P. 143

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 438

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the front wide view camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating, or sloping roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.

Continued

- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*2/right*3 at an intersection etc.)*1.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

*1 : When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*2/right*3, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.
*2 : Left-hand Drive Type
*3 : Right-hand Drive Type

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

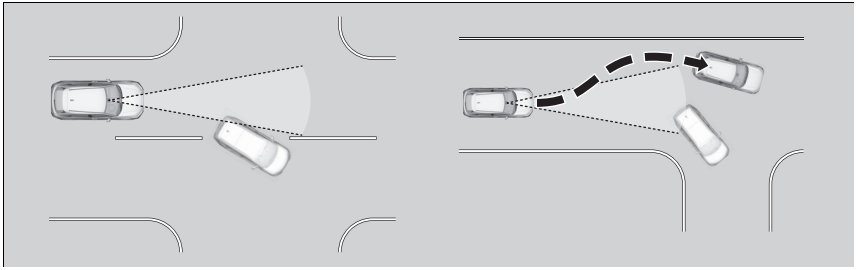
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

Continued

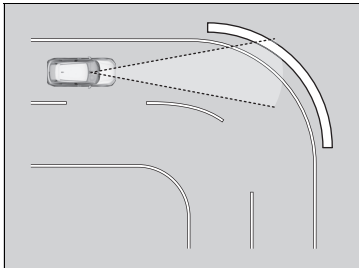
■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

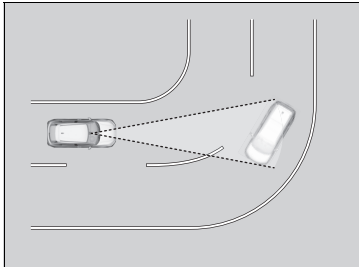
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

Continued

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Low Speed Braking Control*

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through Low Speed Brake function and/or Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control.

Low Speed Braking Control*

⚠WARNING

The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation where the accelerator is mistakenly or aggressively pressed. Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death. Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

If the Low Speed Braking Control activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.

If the system is activated by curbs/parking curbs or level differences on the road and you are unable to park or clear them, turn the system off.

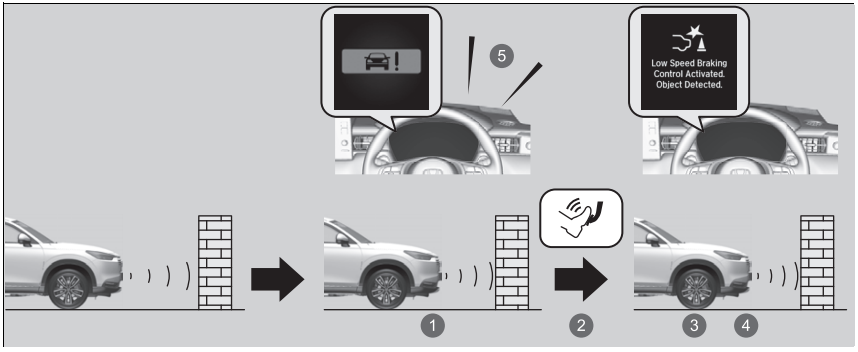
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How the System Works

■ Low Speed Brake function

The Low Speed Brake function provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 2 and 10 km/h and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.



1. The vehicle applies brake
2. Driver depresses brake pedal
3. Stop
4. Release brake after maintaining stationary position
5. Audible Alert

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the Low Speed Brake function will not work when reversing.

Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 528

Low Speed Braking Control*

For directions on the proper handling of the sonar sensors, please refer to the following page.

Sonar Sensors* P. 509

The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into P.

In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance; when loading on ships, lorries, and so on; when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection; or when washing the car in conveyor type car wash machine.

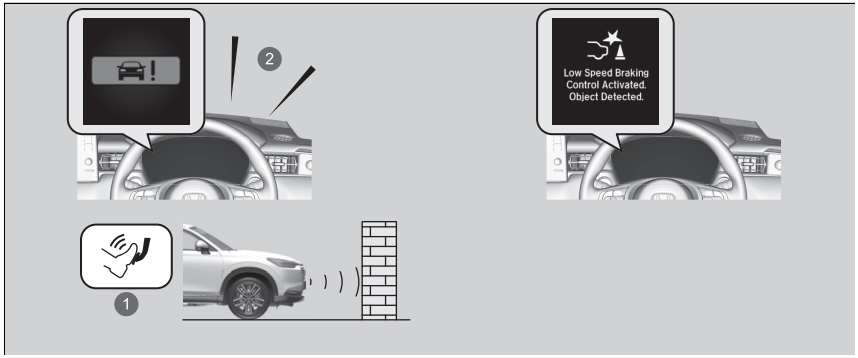
If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 528

* Not available on all models

■ Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 10 km/h and there is an obstacle such as a wall detected near the front of or back of the vehicle, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert if the accelerator pedal is depressed more than necessary. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output of the power system, then Low Speed Brake function will activate when you get closer to the obstacle.



❶ Accidental depression of the accelerator/Limiting the output of the power system
❷ Audible Alert

Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not activate in the following situations.
When moving forward:
When on a steep slope or the shift position is in P, R, or N.
When reversing:
When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than R.

Continued

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control will not working when reversing.

Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 528

■ System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 131
Safety Support P. 143

The system is turned on every time you start the power system, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

System On and Off

The Low Speed Braking Control system may temporarily turn off after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
The system will automatically turn ON after the vehicle has been moving at over 20 km/h for some time.
If the system does not turn on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Conditions for Cancellation

Conditions for Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control:

- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.

Conditions for Low Speed Brake function cancellation:

- A certain amount of time has passed since activation.

■ Low Speed Braking Control System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

■ Examples of obstacles the sonar sensor cannot detect

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.

Conditions for Cancellation

After Low Speed Brake and Collision Mitigation Throttle Control have activated once, they will not activate again for the same obstacle.
They can be activated again after driving for some time after the last activation.

Low Speed Brake and (Rear) Collision Mitigation Throttle Control activate separately when moving forward and reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
However, if Low Speed Brake has been activated, in order to activate Collision Mitigation Throttle Control again, it is necessary to drive for a certain amount of time.

Continued

■ **Examples of situations where the sonar sensor cannot detect obstacles**
- The sonar sensor is dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

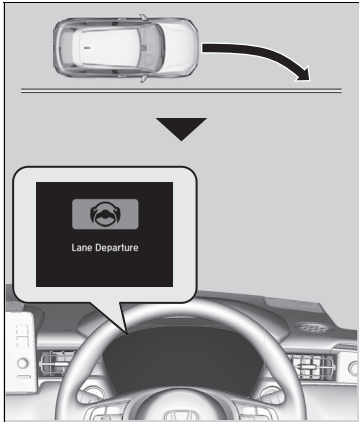
■ **Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly**
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage or suspension modifications.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.
- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.

■ **Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision**
- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving towards flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1.

How the System Works



The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1. If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or a detected oncoming vehicle*1 when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.*1
In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you to remain within the detected lane.
Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

As a visual alert, **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.*1
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.*1
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed, or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

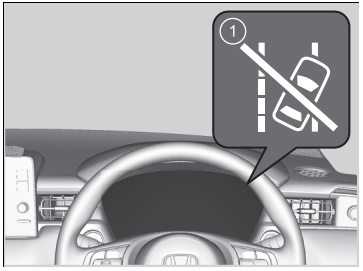
You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
Front Wide View Camera P. 507

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

* Not available on all models

Continued

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or an oncoming vehicle*1.



❶ Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 457

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or oncoming vehicle*1.

➡ **Settings*** P. 146
➡ **Customized Features** P. 330

Except Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

* Not available on all models

■ How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

- The lane markings are white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
  ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

Except Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and road departure mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.
Indicators P. 108

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Continued

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 131
➔ **Safety Support** P. 143

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Except Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

When you have selected **Warning Only***/**Warning only***, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

➔ **Settings*** P. 146
➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*1 or an oncoming vehicle*1 under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.*1

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles*1**

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation*1**

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ **With Little Chance of a Collision*1**

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

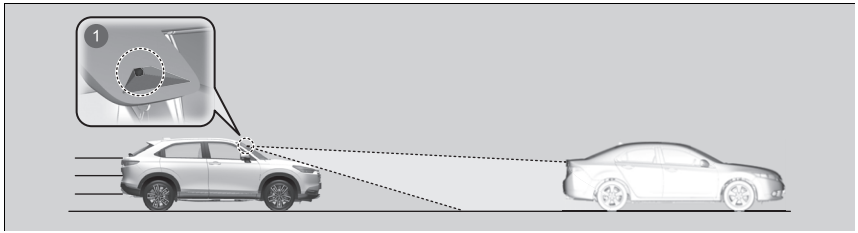
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

*1: Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

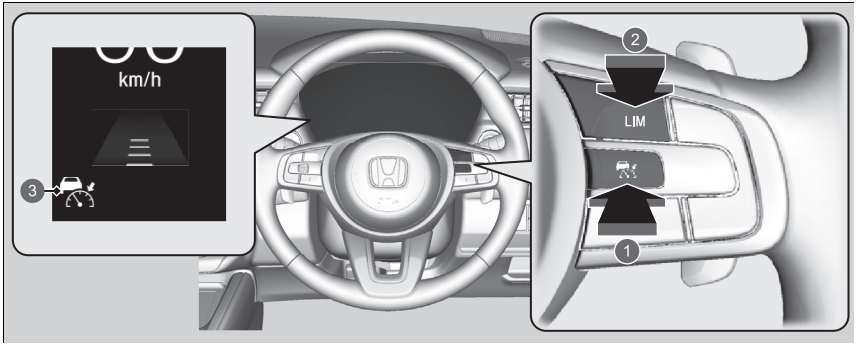
⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Continued

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **LIM** Button*
If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❸ **The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

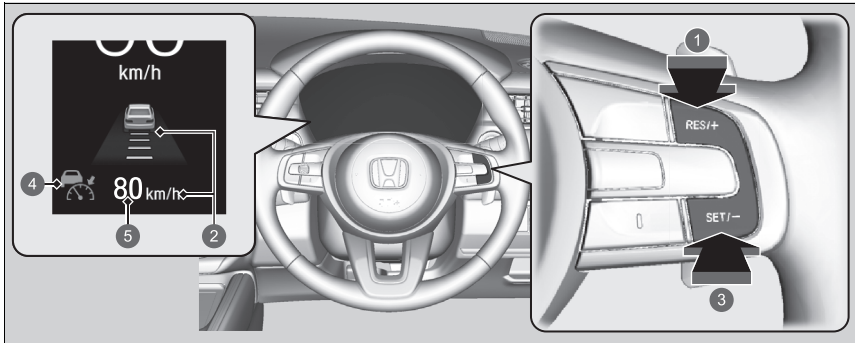
Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 468

* Not available on all models

To Set the Vehicle Speed



1. **RES/+** Button
   Press and release
2. On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
3. **SET/–** Button
   Press and release
4. Indicator (Green)
5. Set Vehicle Speed (White)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow:
Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

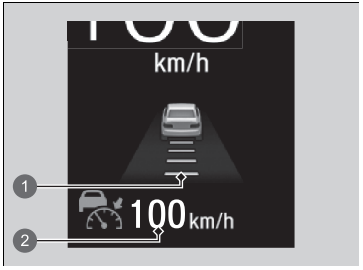
Front Wide View Camera P. 507

Continued

When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** buttons when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS*, and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

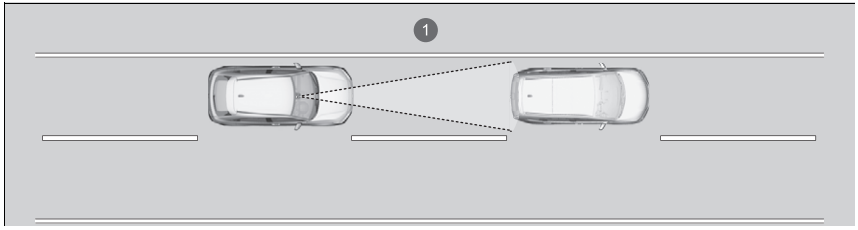
* Not available on all models

When in Operation

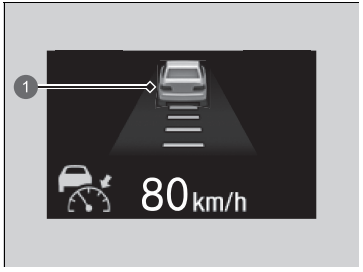
There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 473



❶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

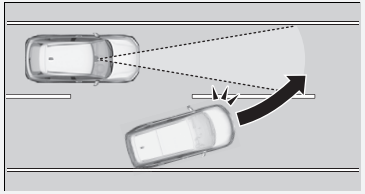


❶ A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

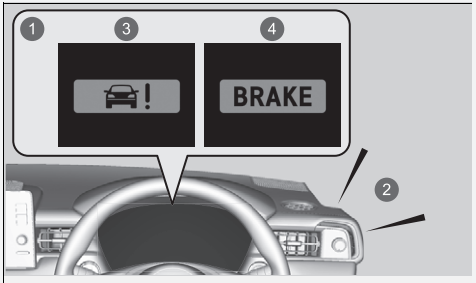
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the front wide view camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



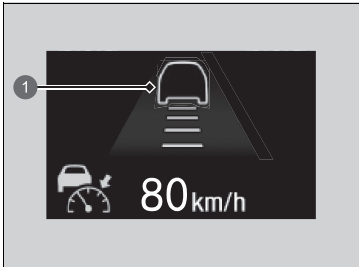
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert
❸ Except Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models
❹ Latin American, Taiwanese, and Filipino models

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



❶ A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

➡ **Settings*** P. 146
➡ **Customized Features** P. 330

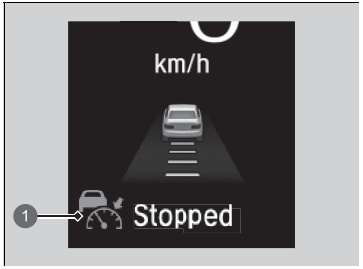
Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 468

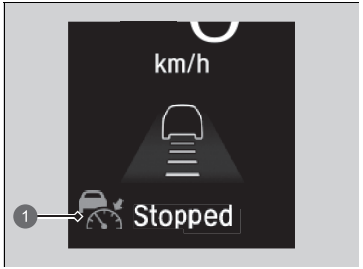
 * Not available on all models

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



1 Indicator (Green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.

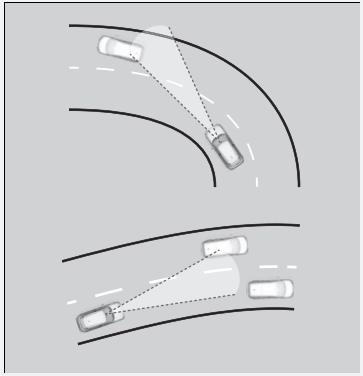


1 Indicator (Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

Continued

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

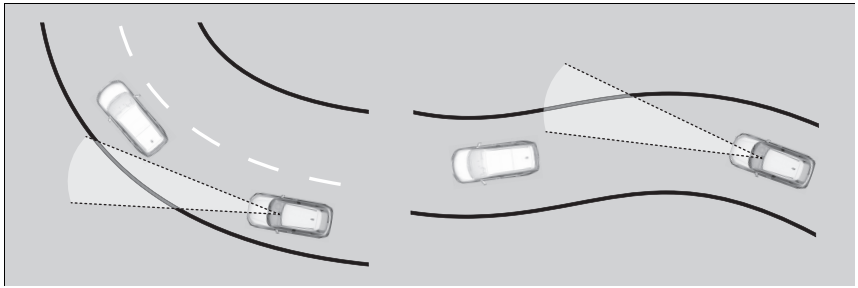
Front Wide View Camera P. 507

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of conditions under which the front wide view camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.

Southeast Asia models

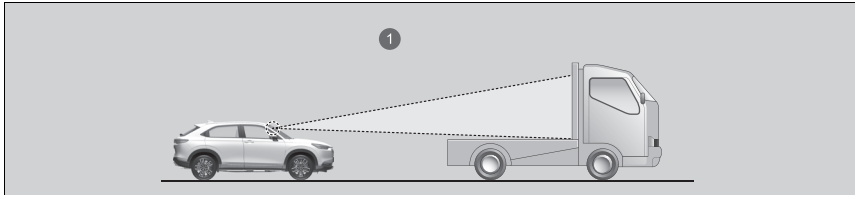
- When the vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped vehicle.

Except Southeast Asia models

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.

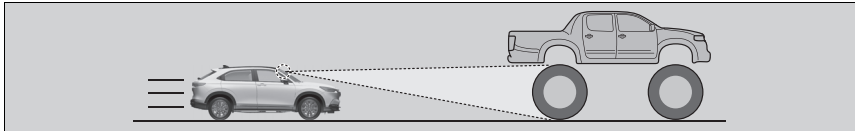
All models

- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



1 Front wide view camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

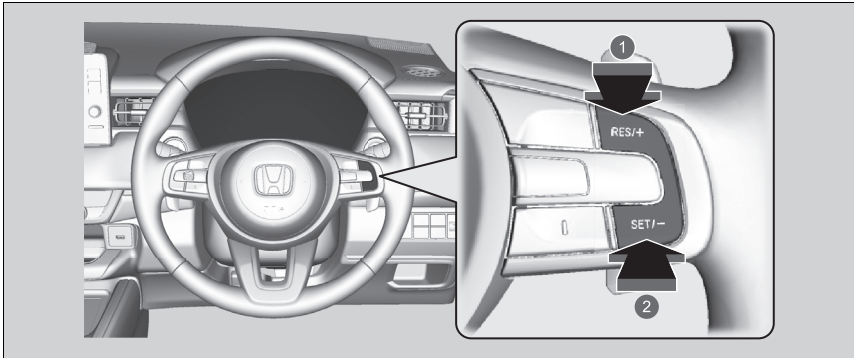


- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

Continued

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

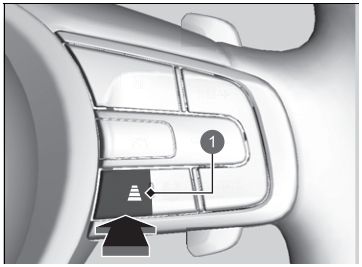
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



❶ Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

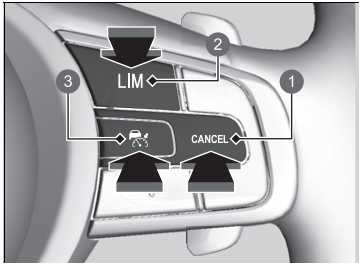
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		43.9 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ **LIM** Button*
❸ Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button*.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

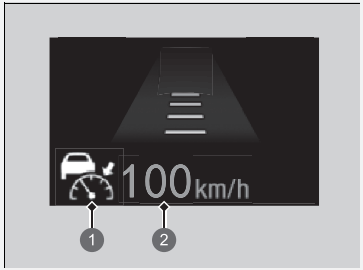
To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.

When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



❶ Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, CMBS, or Low Speed Braking Control* is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

* Not available on all models

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

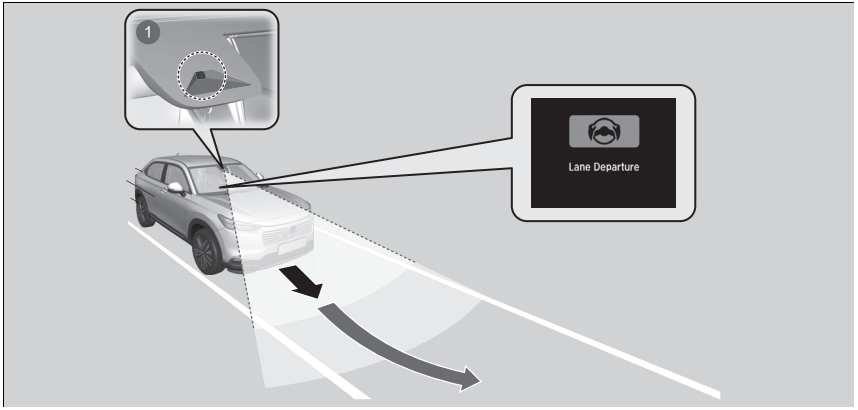
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

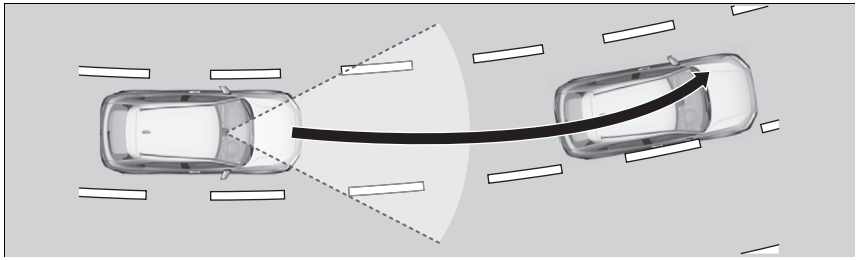
The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➔ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 484

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



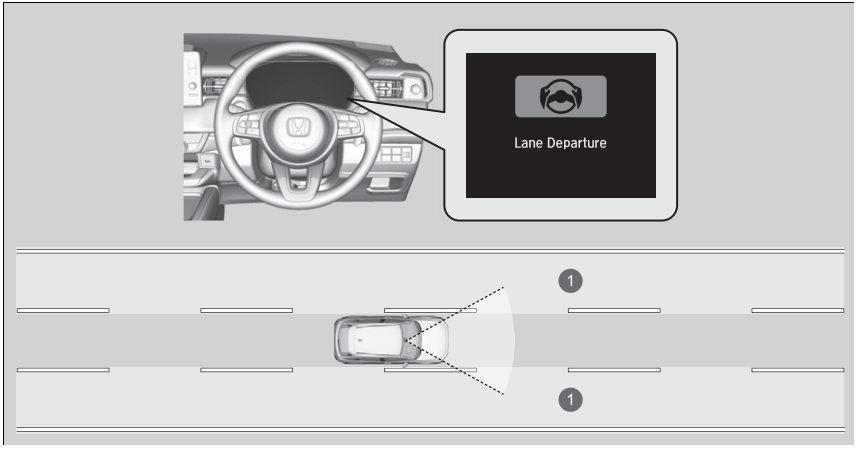
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

Continued

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

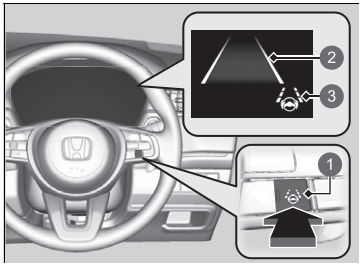


❶ Warning Area

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.

■ How to activate the system



❶ LKAS Button
❷ White lines
❸ LKAS indicator (white)

1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

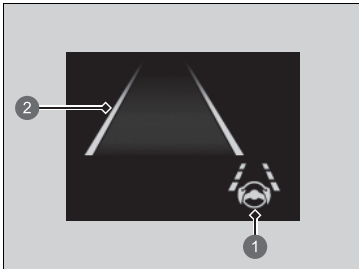
When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:
- Always keep the windscreen around the front wide view camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the front wide view camera lens.
- Do not touch the front wide view camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the front wide view camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

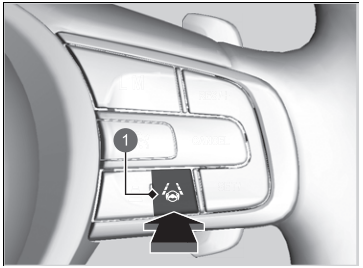
Continued



❶ LKAS indicator (green)
❷ Green lines

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel



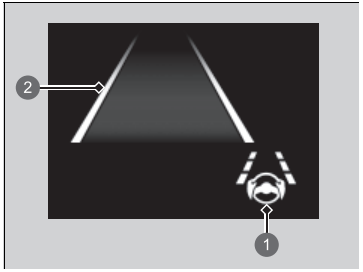
❶ LKAS Button

Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, the lane lines on the gauge change to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



❶ LKAS indicator (white)
❷ White lines

Except Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.

All models

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The front wide view camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the front wide view camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.

Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

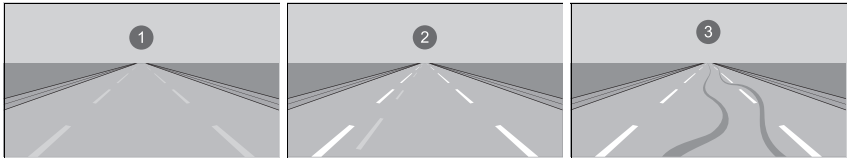
The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

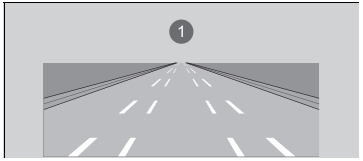
■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines ❷ Duplicate lines ❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

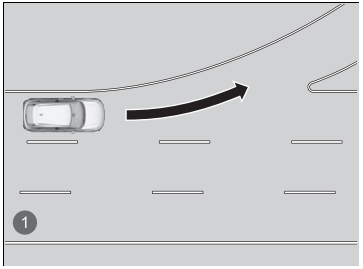


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



❶ Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

* Not available on all models

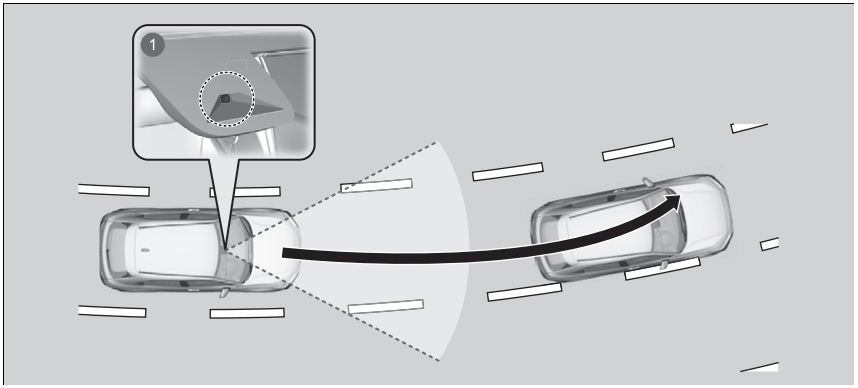
Australian, Fijian, and New Zealand models

Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the front wide view camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help to keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



❶ Front Wide View Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

Traffic Jam Assist

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

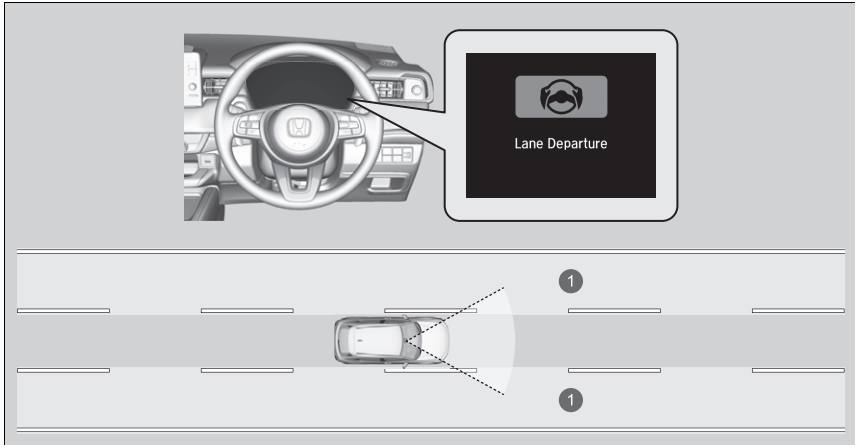
Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 493

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.
When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Warning Area

Continued

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:
- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D or B.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:
- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Refer to the following page for proper handling of the LKAS:

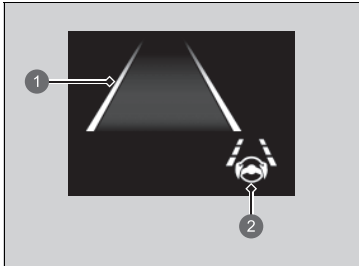
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 478

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

➔ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*** P. 431
➔ **Gauge Content** P. 432

* Not available on all models

How Traffic Jam Assist Works



1 Green Lines
2 LKAS indicator (green)

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

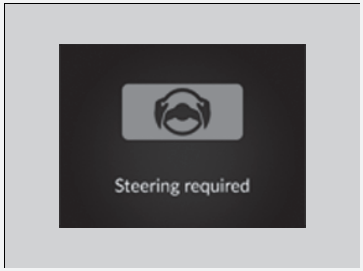
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations P. 493

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

Continued

■ Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

- The temperature of the front wide view camera is too high.
- The front wide view camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the front wide view camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Upon cancellation, the lane lines will disappear from the screen and the beeper may sound.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane keep assist beep** on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 330

■ Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

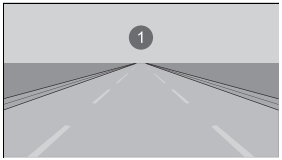
■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

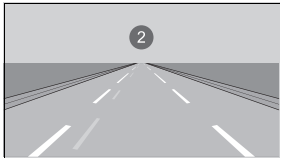
Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

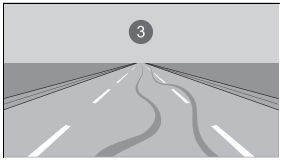
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines

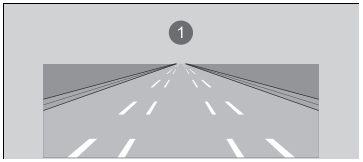


❷ Duplicate lines



❸ Tyre tracks

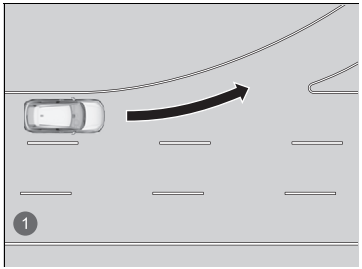
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



❶ Lane void of lines at junction

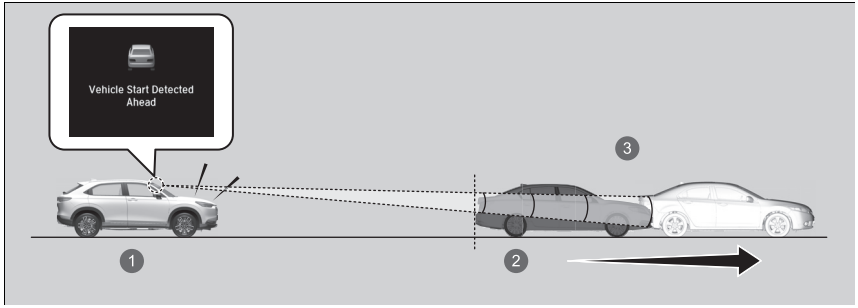
Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



❶ When stopped
❷ Vehicle ahead is stopped
❸ Vehicle ahead starts moving

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

■ When the shift position is in D or B

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation, or the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow*.

■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, or the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

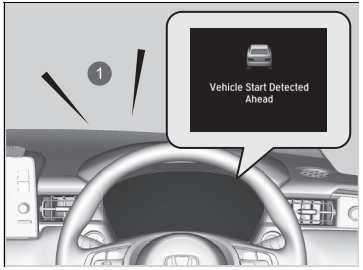
Settings* P. 146
Customized Features P. 330

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) is on.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 461

 * Not available on all models

When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

1 Audible Alert

Continued

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the front wide view camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection**

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

■ **Examples of other limitations on system operation**

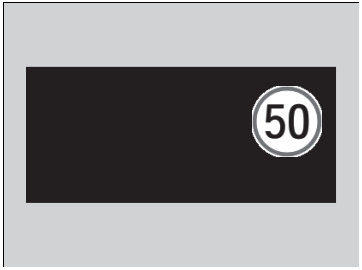
- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

■ How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera.
Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 330

 * Not available on all models

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 507

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 330

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 504

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

■ Roadway conditions

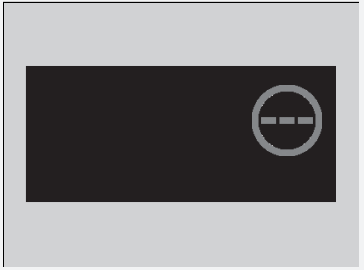
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc. on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, (amber) appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**
- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ **Other conditions**
- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

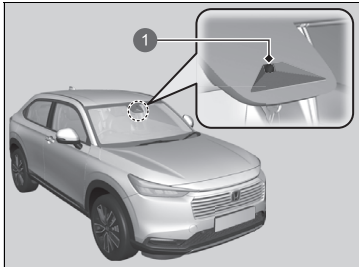
▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at an exit or a junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Front Wide View Camera

The front wide view camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist*, Lead Car Departure Notification System*, Traffic Sign Recognition System*, Adaptive Driving Beam*, and Auto High-Beam*, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Front Wide View Camera Location and Handling Tips



1 Front Wide View Camera

This front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the front wide view camera housing. Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera. Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the front wide view camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the front wide view camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist System Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition.*/Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield Or Poor Viewing Condition.*** message appears:

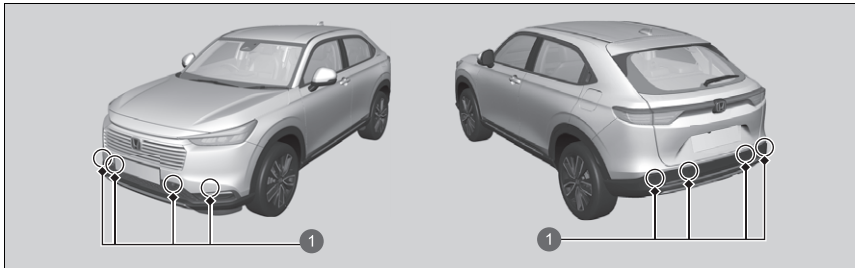
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.
  Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

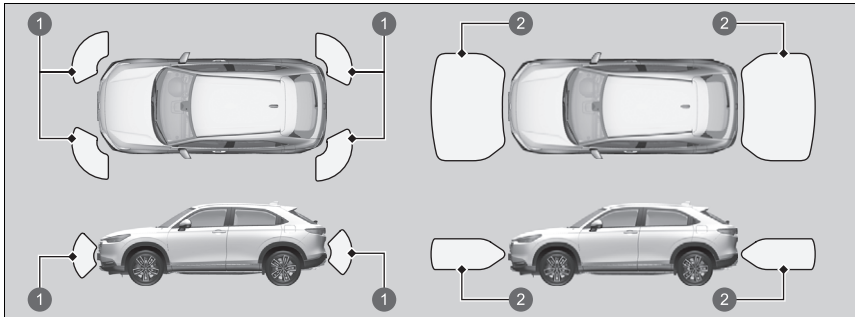
Sonar Sensors*

■ Location and range of sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers.



❶ Sonar Sensors



❶ Corner Sensor Sonar Range
❷ Centre Sensor Sonar Range

Sonar Sensors*

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Consult with a dealer if:
- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

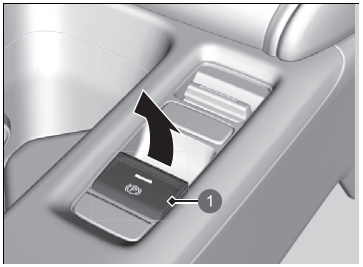
In the following cases, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in a frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

* Not available on all models

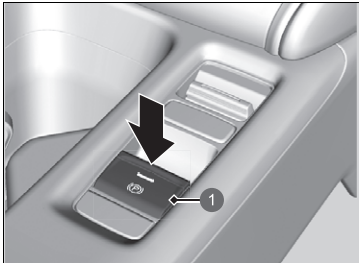
Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.
➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 628

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

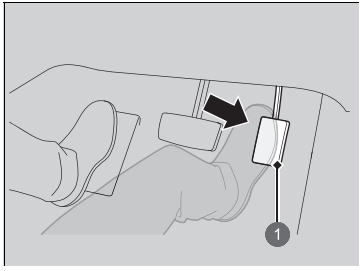
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 512

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



1 Accelerator Pedal

Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Power system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 519
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 518

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power.
Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down.
To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.
When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

➔ **POWER/CHARGE Gauge** P. 128
➔ **High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge** P. 134
➔ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 394

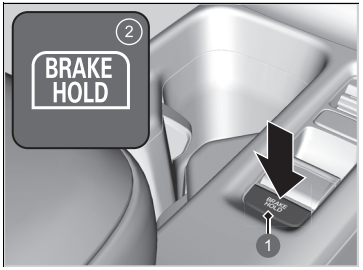
Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Continued

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and start the power system.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

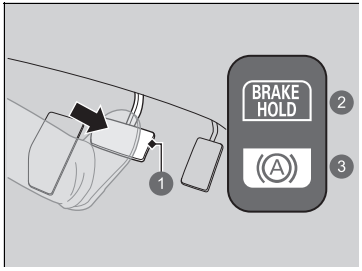
⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system



❶ Brake Pedal
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
❸ Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

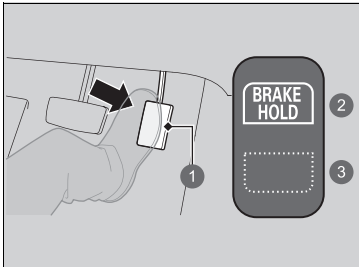
While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 521

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Continued

■ **Cancelling the system**



Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

1. Accelerator Pedal
2. Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
3. Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Goes Off

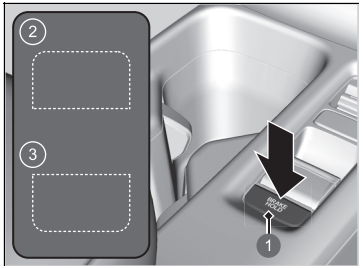
■ **The system automatically cancels when:**

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Goes Off
❸ Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn off the power system or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off.
In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the power system is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

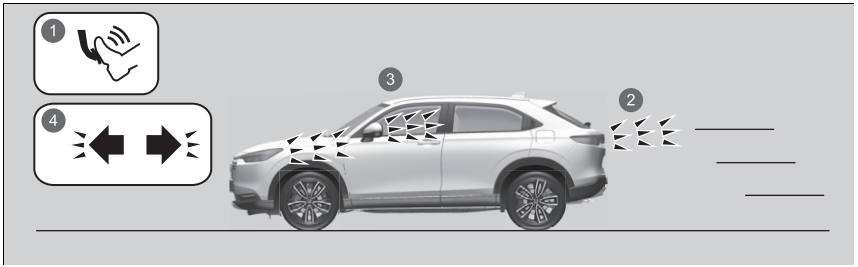
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ **When the system activates:**



1. Hard Braking
2. Brake Lights Come On
3. Hazard Warning Lights Flash
4. Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the power system.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

Continued

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

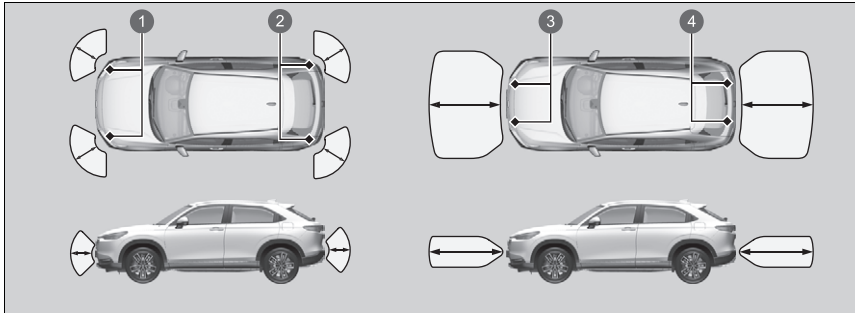
When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

The Sensor Location and Range



❶ Front Corner Sensors*
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors*
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

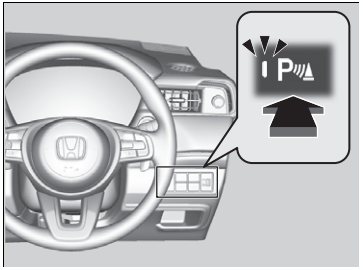
The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.
▶If you put any accessories (such as bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.
Turning off All Rear Sensors P. 528

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Parking Sensor System On and Off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner*, rear centre and rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

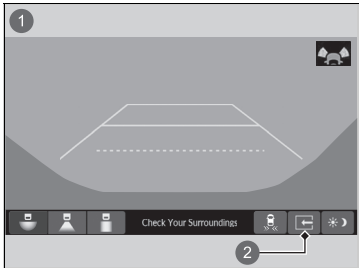
The front corner* and front centre sensors* start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

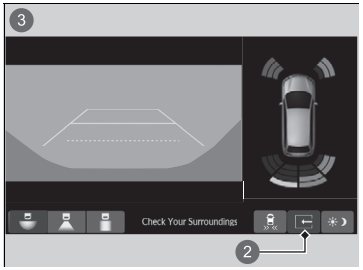
Parking Sensor System*

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

* Not available on all models

■ Screen Operation*





You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

* Not available on all models

Continued

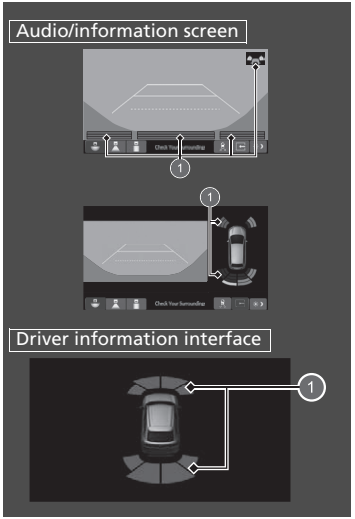
■ When the Distance between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Australian, Fijian, New Zealand, and Singaporean models

Parking Sensor Indicator*

The parking sensor indicator blinks.

▶ If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

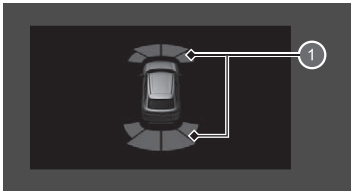
Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface/ Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 91-70 cm Rear: About 110-70 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	
Short	Front: About 55-45 cm Rear: About 60-45 cm	Front: About 70-60 cm Rear: About 70-55 cm	Amber Comes on	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	Front: About 60-50 cm Rear: About 55-45 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	Front: About 50 cm or less Rear: About 45 cm or less	Red Comes on	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

* Not available on all models

Except Australian, Fijian, New Zealand, and Singaporean models

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 115-60 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-50 cm	Amber Comes on	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 50-40 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 40 cm or less	Red Comes on	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
▶ The indicator in the button turns off.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
▶ The beeper sounds once.
5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Models with Low Speed Braking Control

If the rear sensors are turned off when using the parking sensor system, the Low Speed Braking Control System will not activate while reversing.

➡ **Low Speed Braking Control*** P. 447

 * Not available on all models

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠WARNING

Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

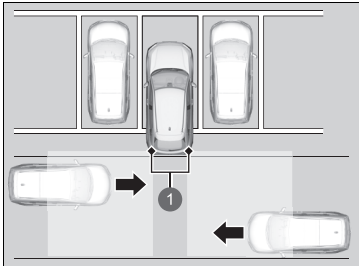
Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



1 Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners.

The system activates when:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 532
  - **Customized Features** P. 330
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:
- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

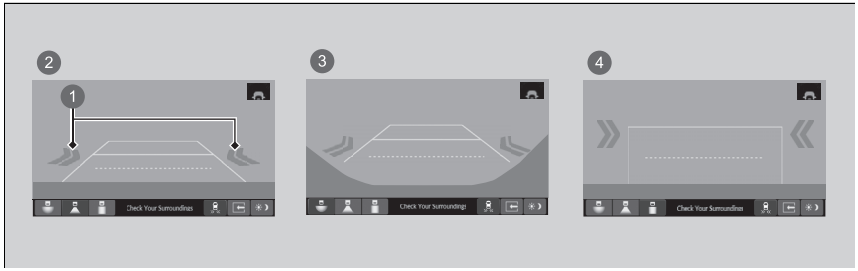
If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

 * Not available on all models

When the System Detects a Vehicle

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.



❶ Arrow Icon
❷ Normal View
❸ Wide View
❹ Top Down View

When the System Detects a Vehicle

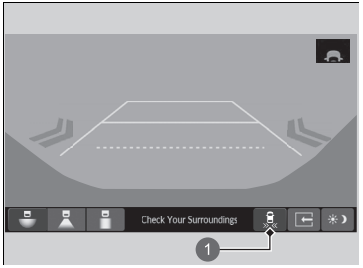
If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.
You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

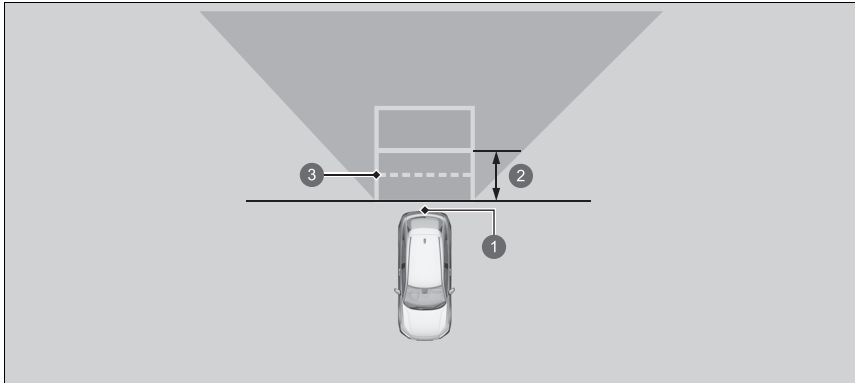
➔ **Customized Features** P. 330

1 Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



1. Camera
2. Approx. 1 m
3. Tailgate open range

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

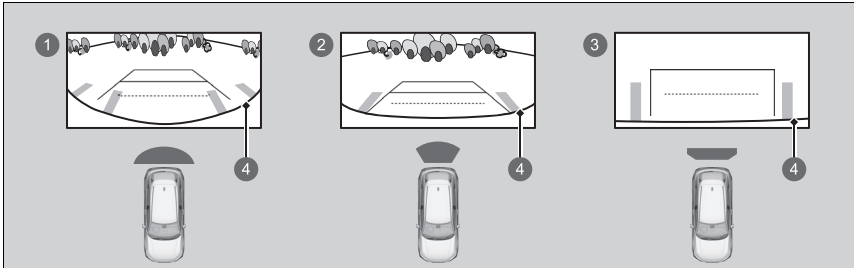
The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

* Not available on all models

Continued

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



1 Wide View Mode
2 Normal View Mode
3 Top Down View Mode
4 Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 330

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Except Indonesian, Thai, Taiwanese, and Pakistani models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of low regular unleaded petrol can lead to engine damage.

Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Taiwanese models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Continued

Pakistani models

EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher

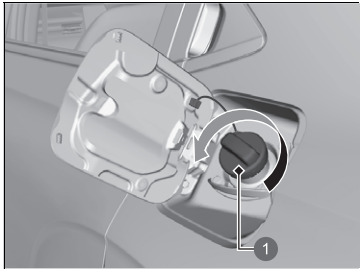
Your vehicle is designed to operate on EURO V/5 unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 40 L**

How to Refuel

❶ Fuel Fill Door Release Handle

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the power system.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.



❶ Cap

4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

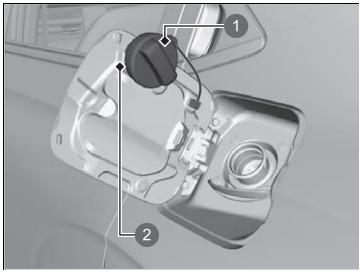
- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Continued



1 Cap
2 Holder

5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

Maintenance Schedule P. 545

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 554
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

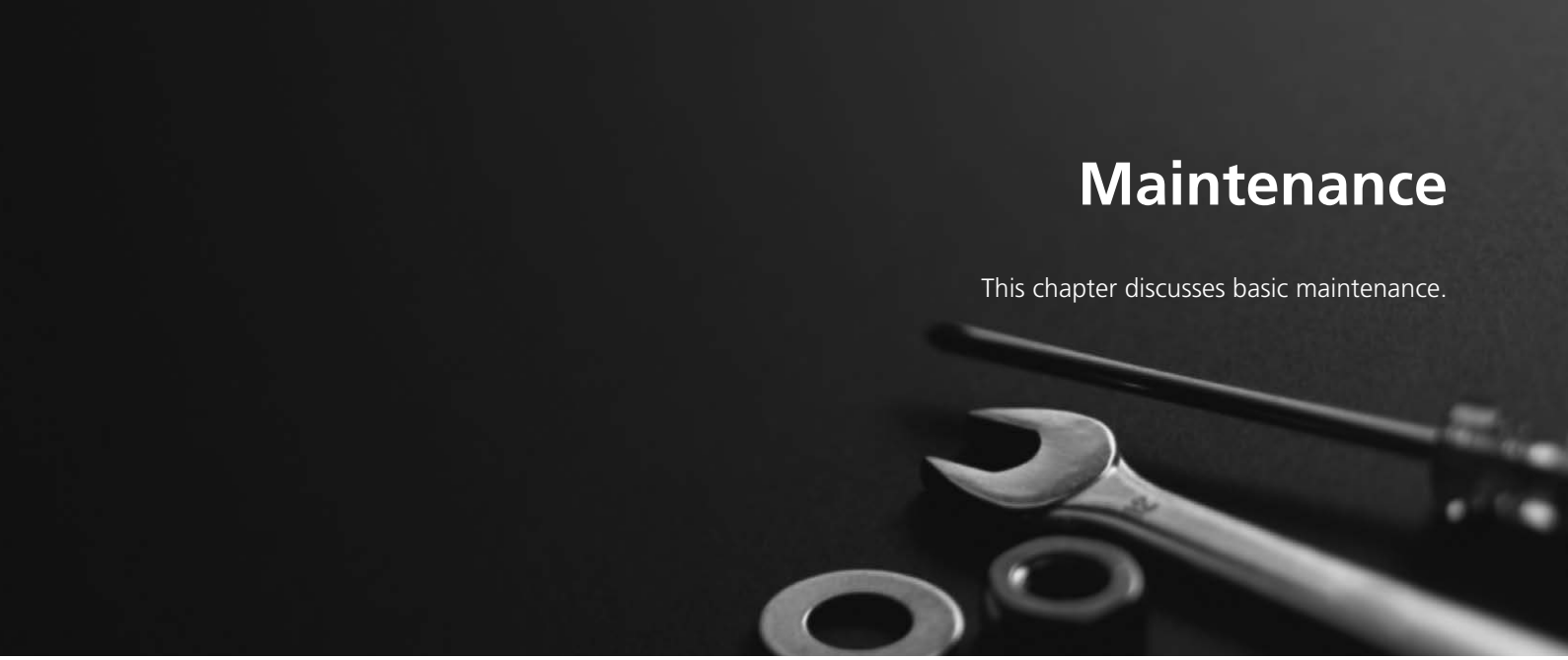
Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
- Inspection and Maintenance 542
- Safety When Performing Maintenance 543
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 544

Maintenance Schedule 545

Maintenance Under the Bonnet
- Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .. 551
- Opening the Bonnet 552
- Recommended Engine Oil 554
- Oil Check 556
- Adding Engine Oil 557
- Engine Coolant 558
- High Voltage System Coolant 561
- Transmission Fluid 563
- Brake Fluid 564
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid 565
- Fuel Filter 565

Replacing Light Bulbs 566

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 572

Checking and Maintaining Tyres
- Checking Tyres 577
- Wear Indicators 578
- Tyre Service Life 578
- Tyre and Wheel Replacement 579
- Tyre Rotation 580
- Snow Traction Devices 582

12-Volt Battery 583

Remote Transmitter Care
- Replacing the Remote Battery 586

Climate Control System Maintenance 588

Cleaning
- Interior Care 592
- Exterior Care 596

Accessories and Modifications 600

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 545

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 564
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 577
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 566
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 572

 * Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage systems, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Continued

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs*2		Every 100,000 km									
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Algerian models
Inspect every 20,000 km.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid*1	Normal		Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe		Every 75,000 km or 3 years									
Replace transmission fluid*2			Every 80,000 km or 4 years									
Replace transmission fluid*3	Normal		Every 150,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe		Every 80,000 km or 4 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank*4	Normal		Every 180,000km									
	Severe		Every 110,000km*6									
Replace fuel filter in tank*5	Normal		Every 150,000km									
	Severe		Every 70,000km*6									
Check expiration date for tyre repair kit bottle			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									

*1:Except Hong Kong, Macao, Jordan, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models
*2:Hong Kong and Macao models
*3:Jordan, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models
*4:Except African (except South African), South American (except Brazilian), and Indonesian models
*5:African (except South African), South American (except Brazilian), and Indonesian models
*6:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Visually inspect the following items:											
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

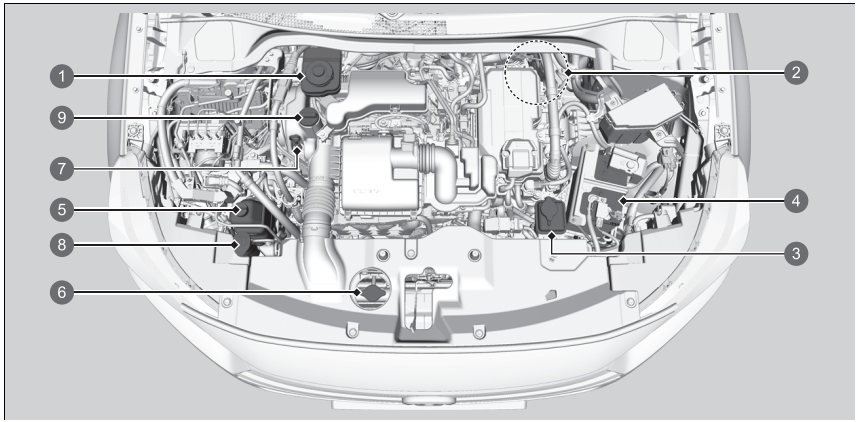
NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under "severe" conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

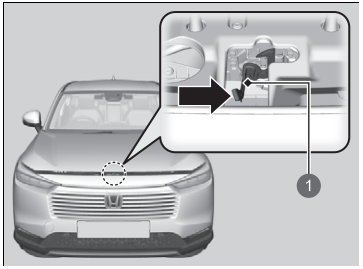


1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
3. High Voltage System Coolant Tank
4. 12-volt Battery
5. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
6. Radiator Cap
7. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
8. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
9. Engine Oil Fill Cap

Opening the Bonnet

❶ Bonnet Release Handle
❷ Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

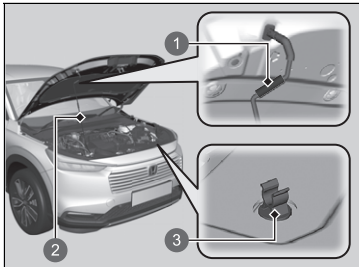
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE
Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



❶ Grip
❷ Support Rod
❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter*.

➡ **Adding Engine Oil** P. 557

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

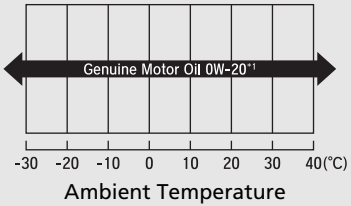
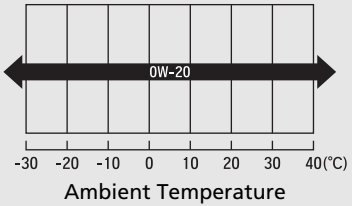
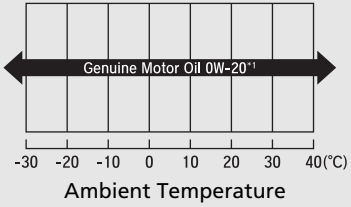
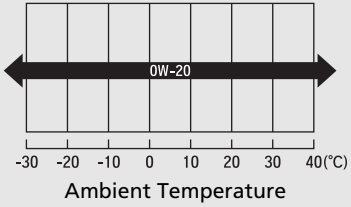
Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

* Not available on all models

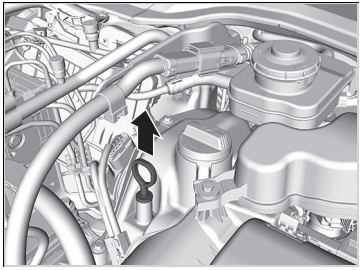
Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• ACEA C5 
Without Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• API service SN or higher grade • API Certification Mark "Starburst" 

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

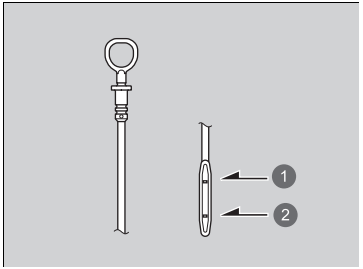
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



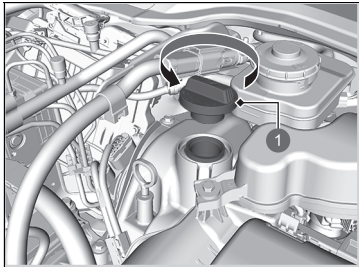
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

❶ Upper Mark
❷ Lower Mark

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

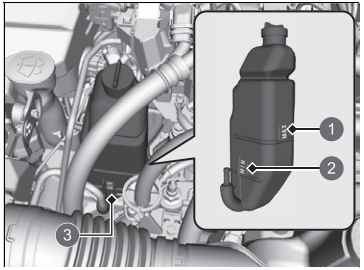
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

■ Reserve Tank

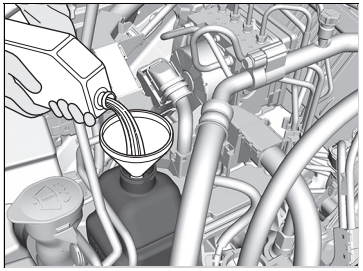


1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.

2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

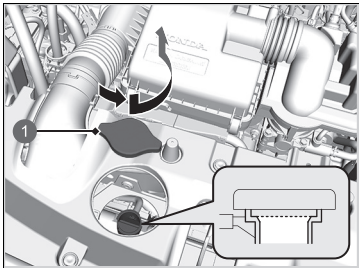
❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

■ Radiator



1 Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Models with pictogram label

■ Radiator Cap

- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Radiator

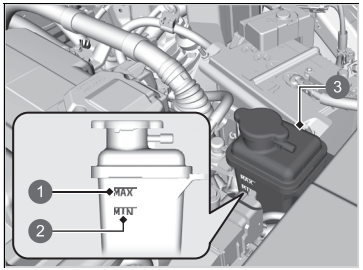
NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

High Voltage System Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Coolant Tank



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Coolant Tank

1. Check the coolant level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
▶ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

High Voltage System Coolant

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Continued

Models with pictogram label

■ Coolant Tank Cap

- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49 kPa.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule P. 545

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

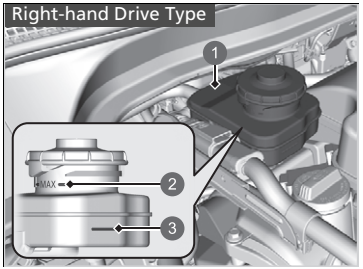
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid

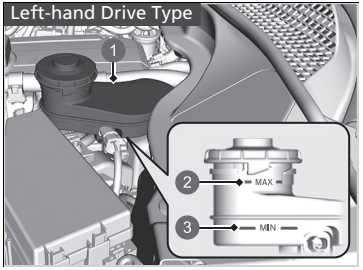
Right-hand Drive Type



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Left-hand Drive Type



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

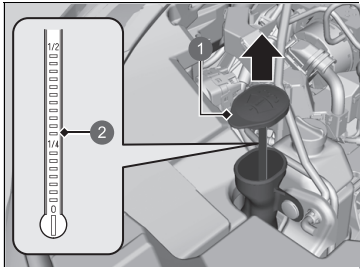
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

❶ Cap
❷ Level Gauge

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights*

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

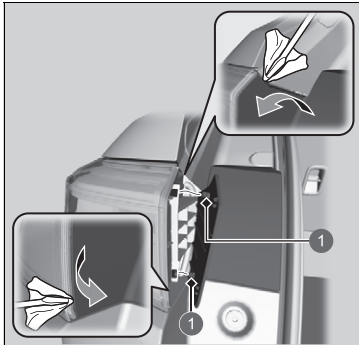
* Not available on all models

Models with bulb type rear turn signal lights

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

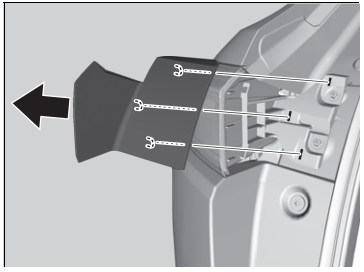
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the upper end of the cover and the vehicle body, then remove the pin.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the vehicle body.
2. Insert the flat-tip screwdriver between the lower end of the cover and the light assembly, then remove the pin.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the light assembly.

❶ Pins

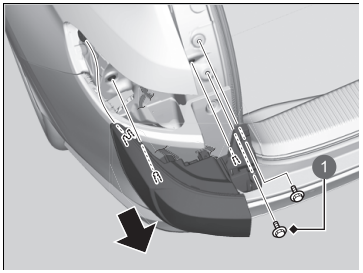


3. Remove the cover by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

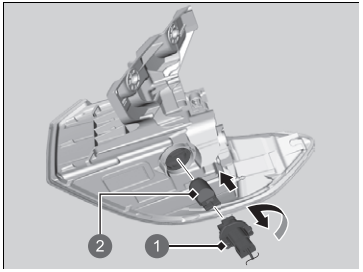
Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



4. Remove the bolts.
5. Remove the light assembly by pulling it in the direction of the arrow in the image.

❶ Bolts



6. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
7. Insert a new bulb.

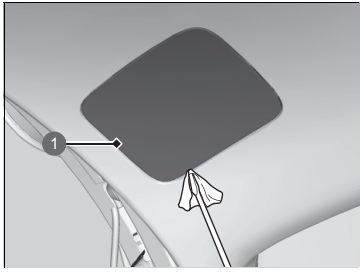
❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

Models with bulb type back-up lights

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

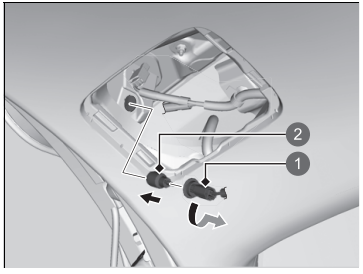
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Rear Fog Light: LED*
Back-Up Light: 16 W



❶ Cover

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Socket
❷ Bulb

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Taillights, Rear Fog Light*, and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights and rear fog light* are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Models with LED type rear turn signal lights

Brake/Taillights and Rear Turn Signal Lights

Brake/taillights and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Models with LED type back-up lights

Taillights and Back-Up Lights

Taillights and back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

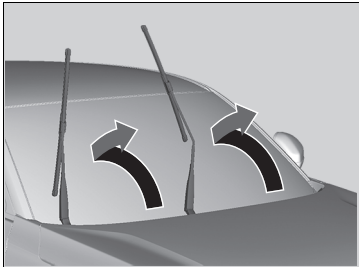
Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.

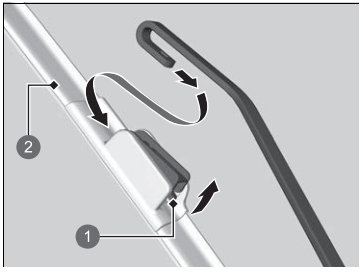
* Not available on all models

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber





1. Tab
2. Holder

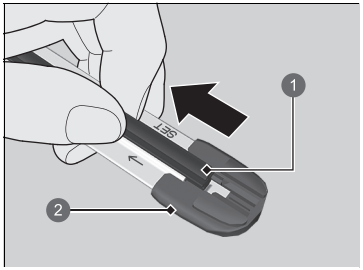
1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

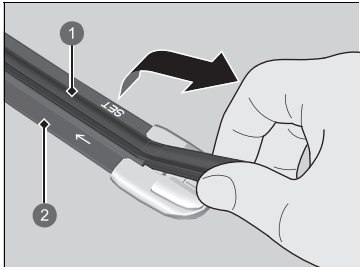
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



1 Wiper Blade
2 End Cap at the bottom

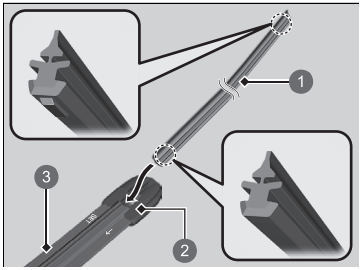
3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



1 Wiper Blade
2 Holder

4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

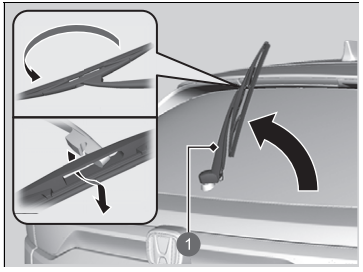
Continued



1 Wiper Blade
2 Cap
3 Holder

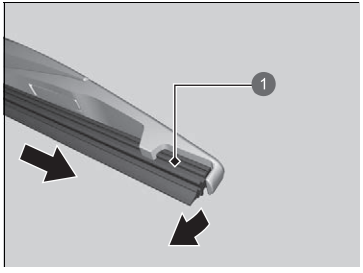
5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

❶ Wiper Arm



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

❶ Wiper Blade

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

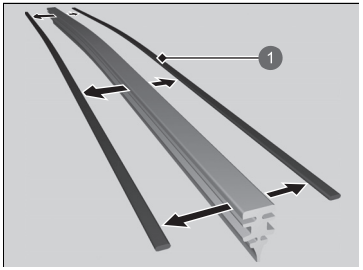
NOTICE

Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

NOTICE

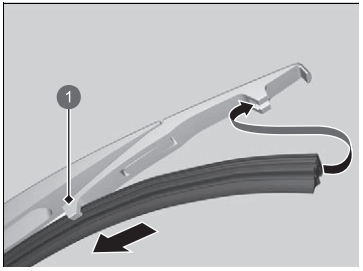
Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.

Continued



4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

1 Retainer



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

1 Holder

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 578
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

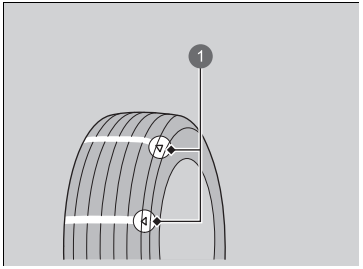
➡ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 422

Models with TPMS

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 419

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

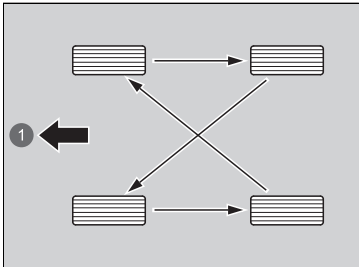
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

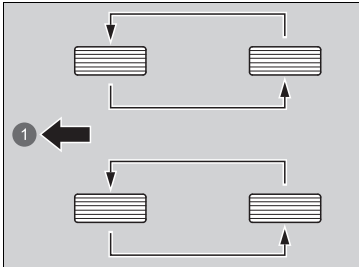
■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks

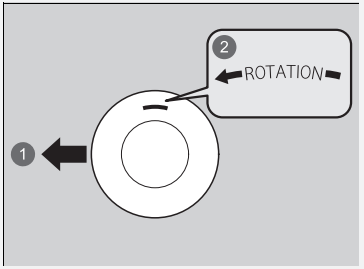


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



1 Front
2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Tyre Rotation

Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 422

Models with TPMS

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

TPMS Calibration P. 419

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-quipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Australian, New Zealand, and Fijian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
225/50R18	**RUD innove8 HYBRID 4718376**

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

All models
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

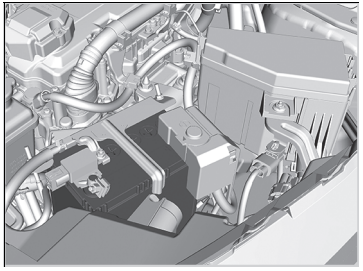
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 162
  - **Clock Setup** P. 290

12-Volt Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Continued

12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Models with System Updates

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

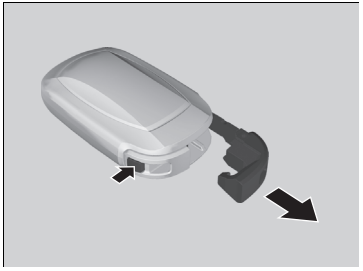
12-Volt Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

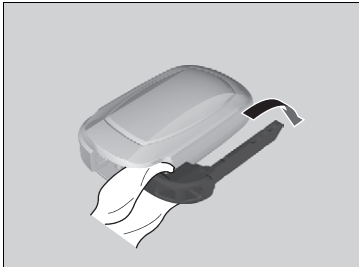
Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.
▶ Wrap the key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

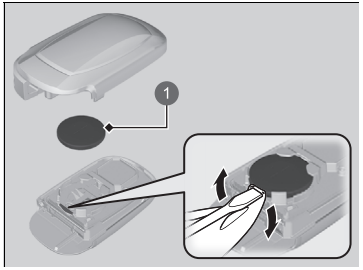
CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

According to Australian Standard;

⚠ **WARNING**

- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

* Not available on all models

Air Conditioning*

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

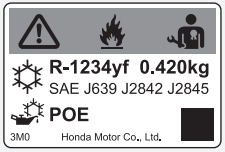
Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

Safety Labels P. 106
Specifications P. 656

Australian, New Zealand, and Fijian models

Singaporean models



: Caution

: Flammable Refrigerant

: Requires a qualified technician to service

: Air Conditioning System

: Air Conditioning System Lubricant Type

 * Not available on all models

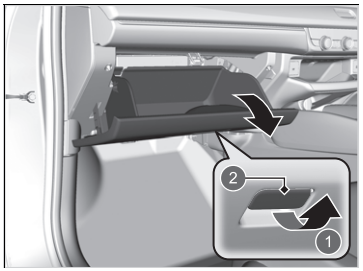
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 545

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

❶ Pull
❷ Handle

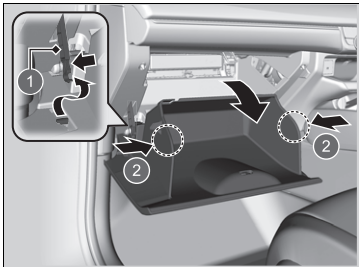
Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

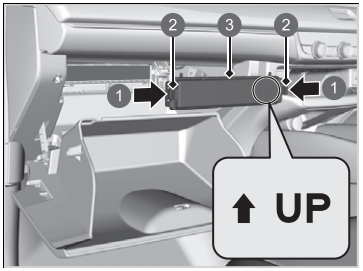
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Continued



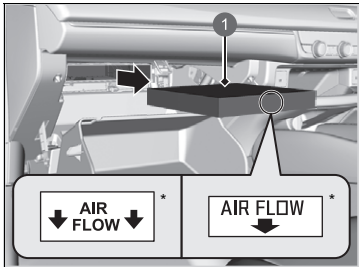
❶ Stopper
❷ Tabs

2. Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



❶ Push
❷ Tabs
❸ Cover

5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



1 Dust and Pollen Filter

6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

* Not available on all models

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.

1 Loop

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass*

The front side windows are laminated with UV- and/or IR-cut film. When cleaning the interior side of the windows, make sure to use a soft damp cloth.

■ Panoramic roof glass*

The interior side of the glass has a heat reflective coating. Wipe using a soft cloth moist with cold or warm water.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Models with Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass

To ensure the longevity of the UV- and/or IR-cut film, avoid:

- Opening and closing the windows when they are covered with dirt and other debris.
- Using a glass cleaner containing polishing compounds, wax, or detergents.

Models with panoramic roof

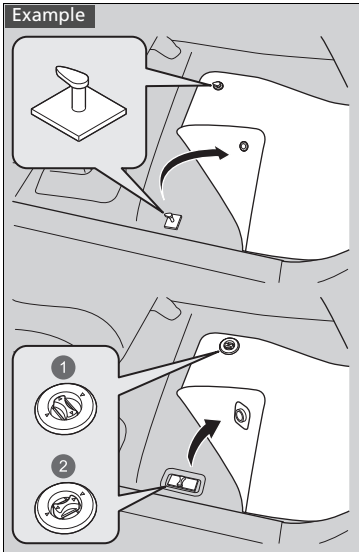
To ensure the longevity of the heat reflective coating avoid:

- Using glass cleaners, waxes, or detergents that contain polishing powder or compound.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Floor Mats



1 Unlock
2 Lock

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.

2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.

3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.

4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

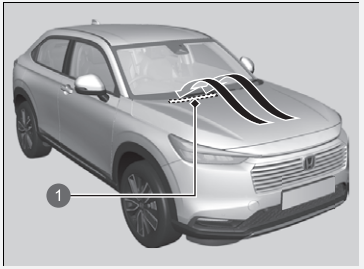
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera* or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

* Not available on all models

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Water repellent glass*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Cleaning the Window

Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Hydrophilic Mirror*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.

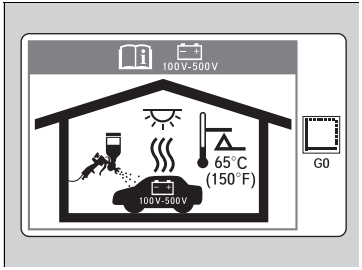
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.

▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.

3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

■ Painting the Vehicle

Refer to the colour code label and the temperature notice label affixed to the doorjamb on the left side before painting the vehicle.



Models with pictogram label

High temperature may damage the high-voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

Hydrophilic Mirror*

NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

* Not available on all models

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 643
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

⚠WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

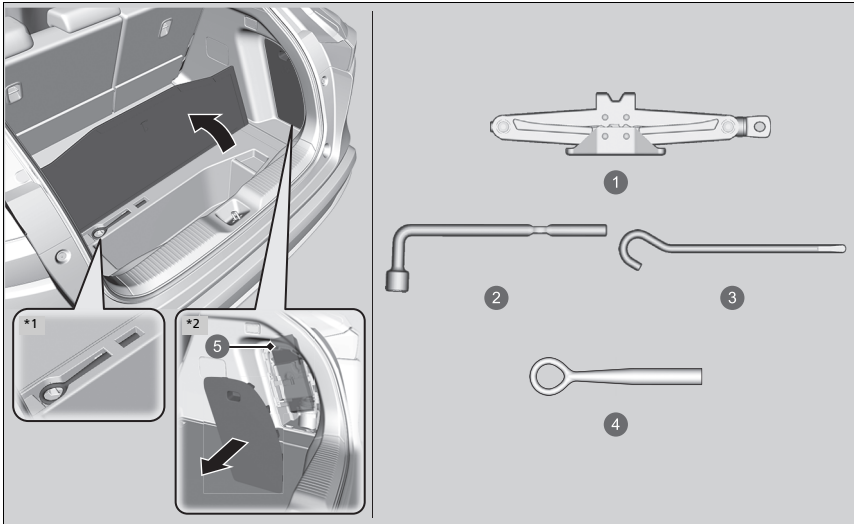
If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools 604
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 605
Handling of the Jack..... 620
Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure..... 624
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 625
Emergency Power System On..... 626
Emergency Power System Off..... 627
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 628
Shift Lever Does Not Move..... 631
Overheating 632
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears..... 635
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 636
If the Limited Stopping Power*1/Reduced Stopping Power*2 Warning Appears... 636
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 637
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 638
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 639
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On ..640
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks... 641
If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks.....642
Fuses
Fuse Locations 643
Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 650
Emergency Towing..... 651
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 652

Types of Tools



❶ Jack*
❷ Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle*
❸ Jack Handle Bar*
❹ Detachable Towing Hook
❺ Tool Bag*

*1: Models without tool bag
*2: Models with tool bag

* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

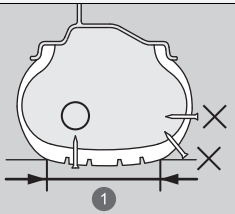
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

1 Contact Area

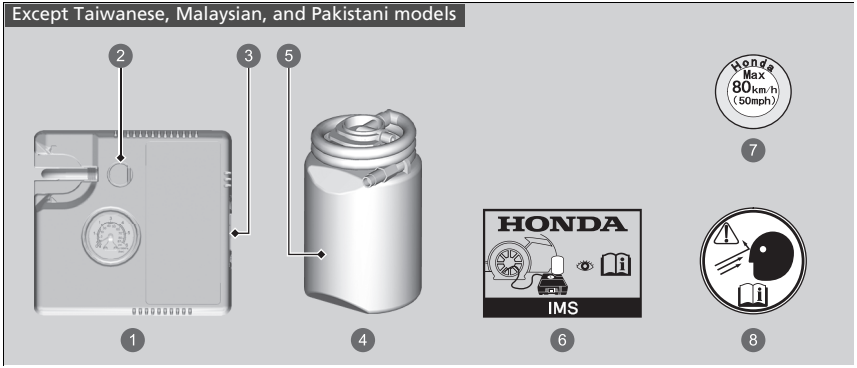
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Except Taiwanese, Malaysian, and Pakistani models

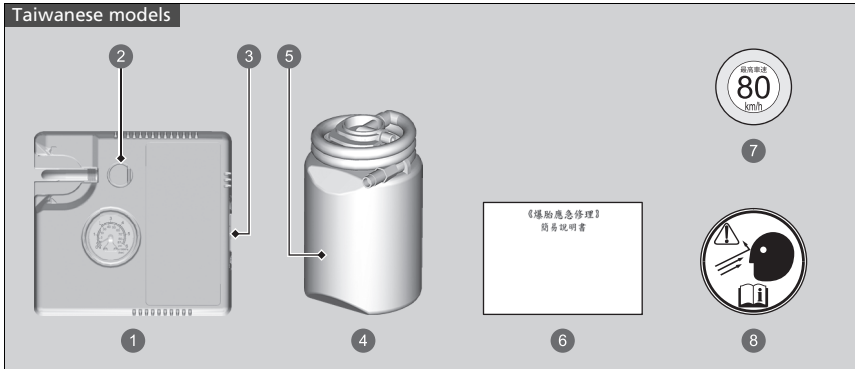


1. Air Compressor
2. Deflate Button
3. Air Compressor Switch
4. Sealant Bottle
5. Expiration Date
6. Instruction Manual
7. Speed Restriction Label
8. Wheel Label

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Models with instruction manual

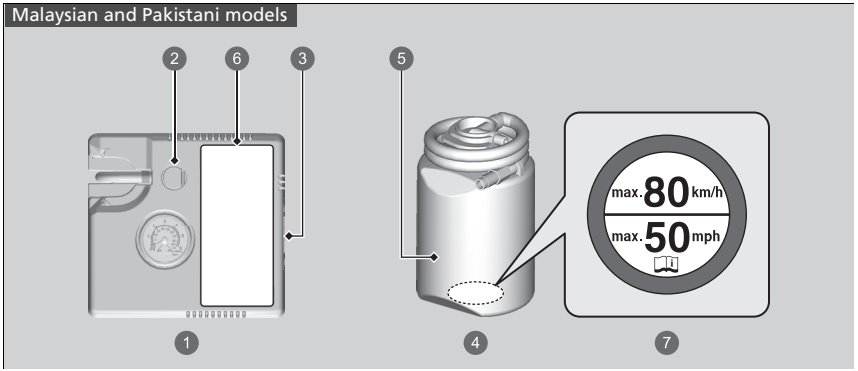
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



1. Air Compressor
2. Deflate Button
3. Air Compressor Switch
4. Sealant Bottle
5. Expiration Date
6. Instruction Manual
7. Speed Restriction Label
8. Wheel Label

Continued

Malaysian and Pakistani models

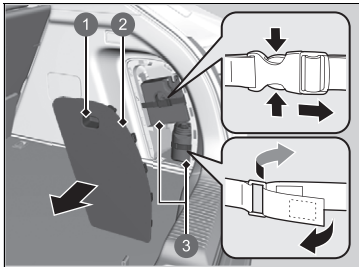


❶ Air Compressor
❷ Deflate Button
❸ Air Compressor Switch
❹ Sealant Bottle
❺ Expiration Date
❻ Instruction Label
❼ Speed Restriction Label

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Models with instruction label

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction label applied on the kit.

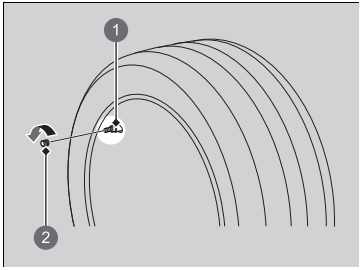


❶ Tab
❷ Cover
❸ Tyre Repair Kit

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.
3. Take the kit out of the compartment.
4. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tyre and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

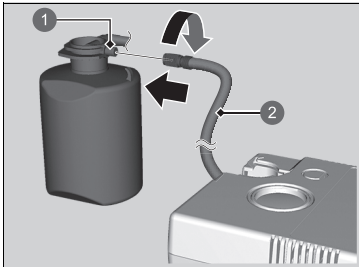
Continued

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Valve Cap

1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



❶ Bottle Tyre Valve
❷ Air Compressor Hose

2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

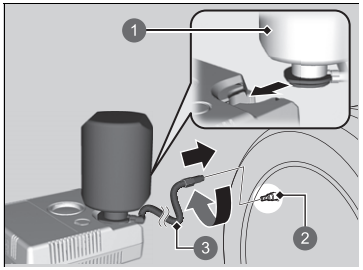
Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

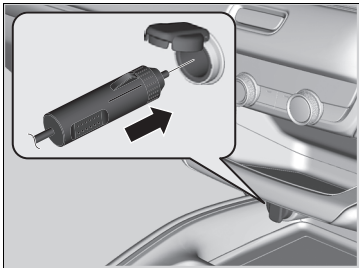
The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

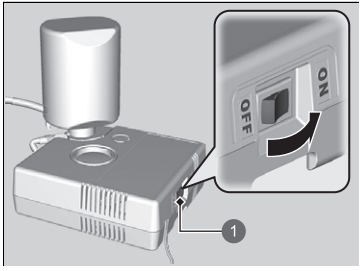


❶ Sealant Bottle
❷ Tyre Valve Stem
❸ Sealant/Air Hose

4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Continued





❶ Air Compressor Switch

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 256

7. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 105

8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.

9. After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the kit.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

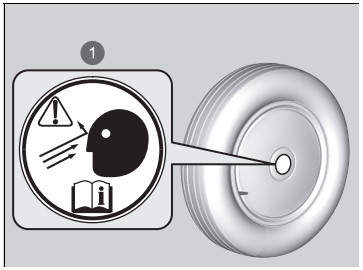
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



1 Wheel Label*

10. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Detach the bottle from the air compressor.
13. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
14. Apply the wheel label* to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.

Injecting Sealant and Air

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

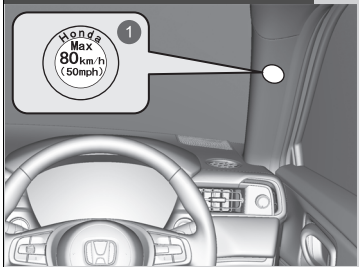
This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

* Not available on all models

Continued

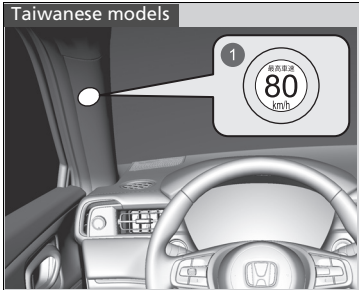
■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

Except Taiwanese, Malaysian, and Pakistani models



❶ Speed Restriction Label

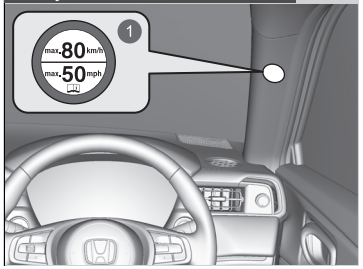
Taiwanese models



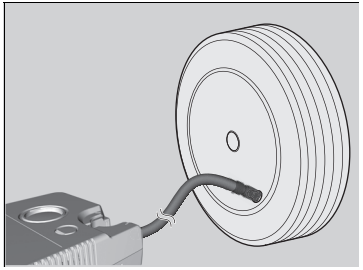
❶ Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Malaysian and Pakistani models



❶ Speed Restriction Label

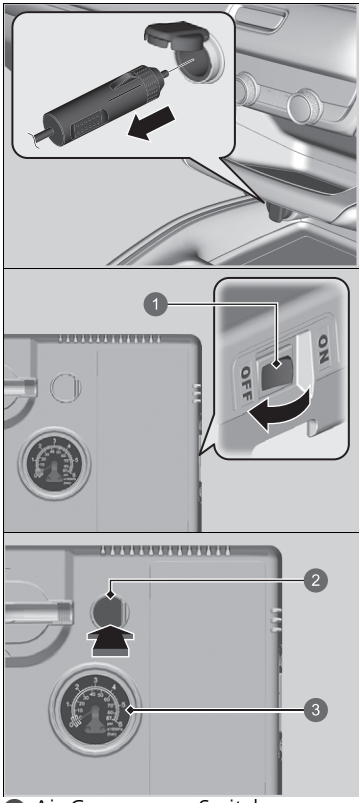


4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is:
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  Emergency Towing P. 651
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doojamb) or more: Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

Continued



❶ Air Compressor Switch
❷ Deflate Button
❸ Air Pressure Gauge

- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doojamb):
  Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Injecting Sealant and Air** P. 610
  Then, drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.
  Do not exceed 80 km/h.

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
7. Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
8. Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

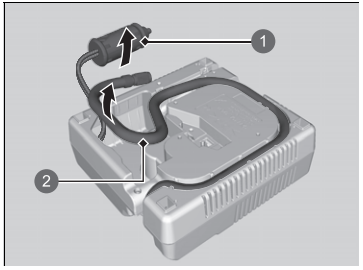
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

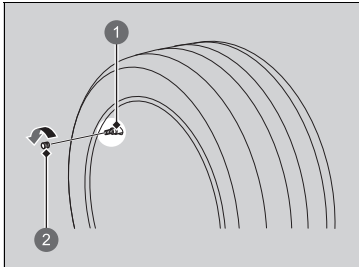
■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



❶ Power Plug
❷ Air Hose

1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.
➡ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 606
2. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.



❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Valve Cap

4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

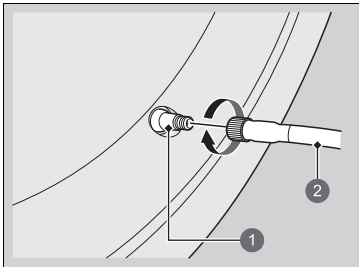
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

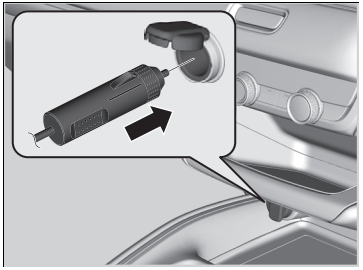
NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued

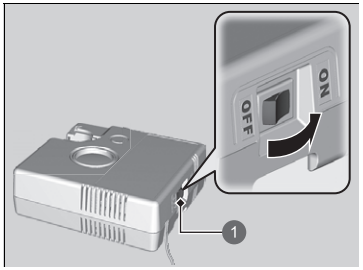


❶ Tyre Valve Stem
❷ Air Hose

5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 256
7. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 105

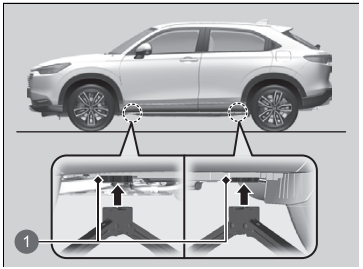


1 Air Compressor Switch

8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
10. Turn off the kit.
▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
11. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Models without jack

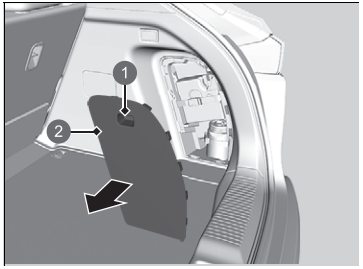
Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



❶ Jacking Points

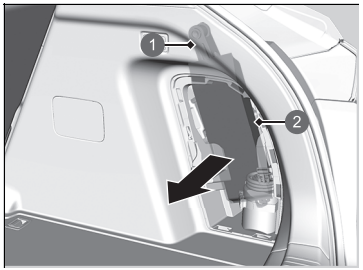
Models with jack

How to Set up the Jack



❶ Tab
❷ Cover

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.



❶ Jack
❷ Tool Bag

5. Take the jack and tool bag out of the compartment.
6. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.

How to Set up the Jack

⚠WARNING

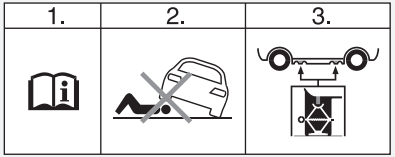
The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

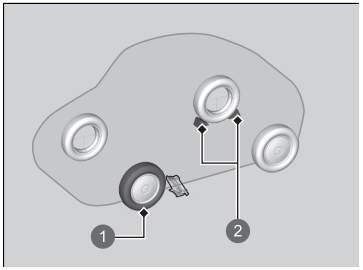
Australian, New Zealand, Fijian, and Indonesian models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



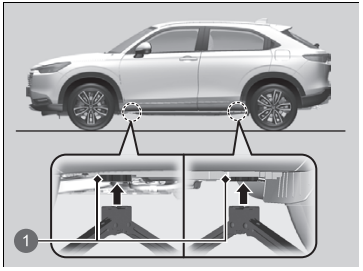
1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

Continued



❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks

7. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



❶ Jacking Points

8. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

How to Set up the Jack

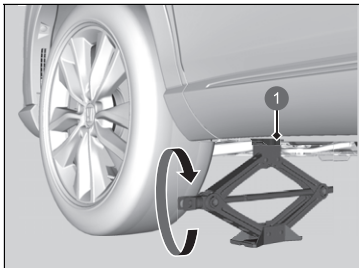
WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call a dealer or a professional towing service.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

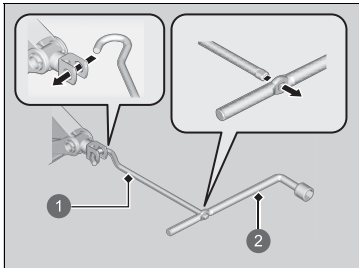
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the power system is on.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



❶ Jacking Point

9. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



❶ Jack Handle Bar
❷ Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

10. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The **Temperature Is Too Cold For Vehicle To Operate** message*1/the **Temperature Too Low For Vehicle To Operate** message*2 appears.	• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature. • Have the vehicle towed to a warmer location. ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 651
	The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears.	➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 625
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Put the transmission into P.
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 195 ➡ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 120
Check the power system starting procedure.		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again. ➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 383
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 650

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

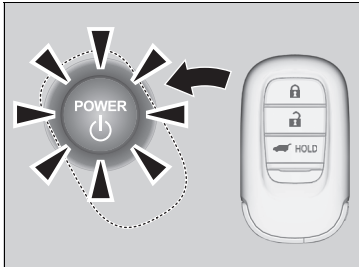
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 628

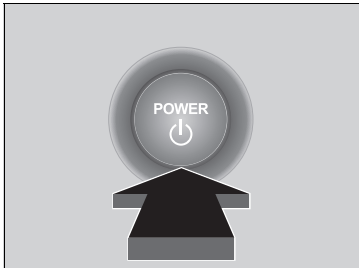
Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency start procedure.
➡ **Emergency Power System On** P. 626

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the **READY** indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:





1. Press the **POWER** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.
3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button while the **POWER** button is on.
   ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.
Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Power System On

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 631

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

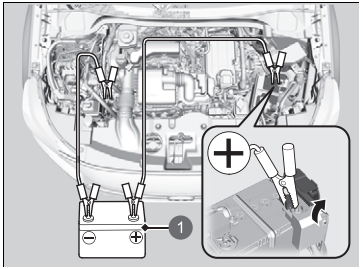
Emergency Power System Off

NOTICE

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.
If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



❶ Booster Battery

1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

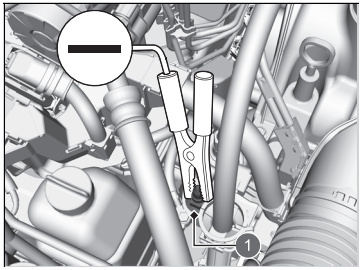
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



❶ Stud Bolt

5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting Procedure

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Jump Starting Procedure

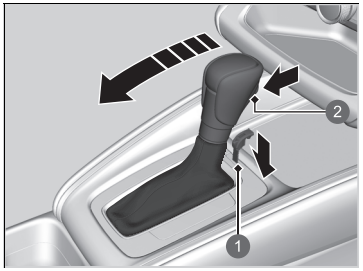
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, and Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS* may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you turn the power system on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 * Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

■ Releasing the Lock



❶ Shift Lock Release Slot
❷ Release Button

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The POWER REDUCED **Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.** message*1/the **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message*2 appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2 appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

The POWER REDUCED Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced. Message*1/ The High Temperature. Power Reduced. Message*2 Appears on the Driver Information Interface

The POWER REDUCED **Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.** message*1/the **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message*2 appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
▶ Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into P. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2 on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If the POWER REDUCED **Power System Temperature High. Power May Be Reduced.** message*1/the **High Temperature. Power Reduced.** message*2 appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

■ The Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool. Message*1/The Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool. Message*2 Appears on the Driver Information Interface

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.

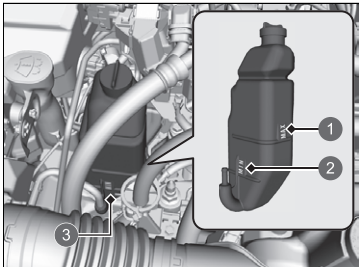
▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

Continued

■ Next thing to do



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/ the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2 on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.
If the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Do Not drive. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*1/the **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.** message*2 does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Turn the power system off and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

Oil Check P. 556

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately turn the power system off and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Limited Stopping Power*1/Reduced Stopping Power*2 Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

*2: Except Latin American, Filipino, and Taiwanese models

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system or electric vehicle system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

- Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.
- Comes on when there is no petrol in the fuel tank, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 640

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

(Red)

(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 510

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

Models with deflation warning system

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

Deflation Warning System Calibration P. 422

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Models with TPMS

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

TPMS Calibration P. 419

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Fuse Locations

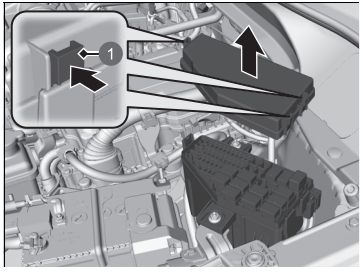
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

■ Fuse box A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



❶ Tabs

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	30 A
2		Left LCM	15 A
3		Hazard	10 A
4		Stop	10 A
5		PCU EWP	15 A
6		–	(20 A)
7		EVTC	20 A
8		IGP	15 A
9		IG Coil	15 A
10		DBW	15 A
11		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		Engine Water Pump	30 A
14		Keyless Access System	10 A
15		Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16		Right LCM	15 A
17		Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		Sub Audio*	(7.5 A)
20		Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		Audio	15 A
22		Back Up	15 A
23		Sub Fan	30 A
24		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25		IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26		LAF	10 A
27	–	–	–
28	–	–	–
29	–	–	–
30	–	–	–
31	–	–	–
32	–	–	–
33	–	–	–

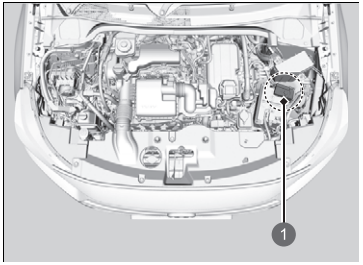
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Fuse box B

Located near the ⊕ terminal of the 12-volt battery.

Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.



1 Fuse Box

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		Battery Main	170 A
b		Battery Main (Fan)	60 A
c		Battery Main (ENG)	80 A
d		Battery Main (HEV)	60 A
e		EPS	70 A
f		ESB	40 A

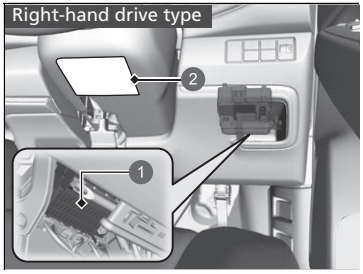
Models with fuse label

■ Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

■ Type A

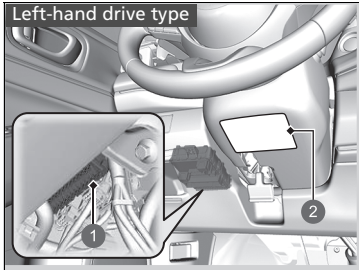
Located under the dashboard.

Right-hand drive type



❶ Fuse Box
❷ Fuse Label

Left-hand drive type



❶ Fuse Box
❷ Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	7.5 A
2		ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3		Blind spot information System*	(10 A)
4		LCM*	(5 A)
5		Option	10 A
6		Option 2	10 A
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A
9		AIRCON	10 A
10		–	(20 A)
11		MON	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	RR L	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	AS	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission	10 A
18		USB Charger*	(10 A)
19		–	(20 A)
20		Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21		ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23		Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
24		Option	10 A
25		Driver Door Lock*	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	RR R	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	DR	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
30		–	(10 A)
31	DR	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
32		Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	DR	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
34		VSA/ABS	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36		–	(20 A)
37		Heated Steering Wheel*	(15 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39		Driver Door Unlock*	(10 A)

* Not available on all models

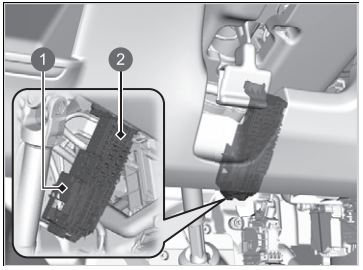
Continued

Left-hand drive type

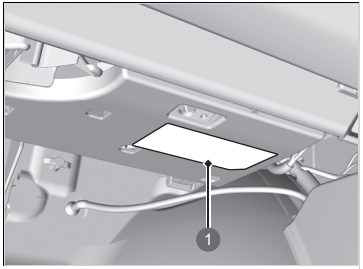
■ Type B

Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box.
Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1
❷ Fuse No. 2-25



❶ Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the glove box.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

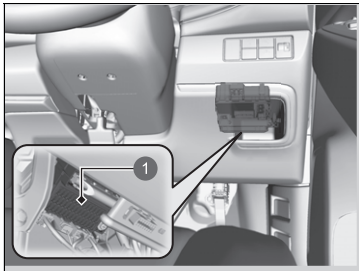
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9		–	(40 A)
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11		–	(40 A)
12	–	–	–
13		Power Tailgate Motor	(40 A)
14		SRS	10 A
15		IG HOLD1	10 A
16		IG HOLD3	10 A
17		IMG	10 A
18		–	(20 A)
19	–	–	–
20	–	–	–
21		Power Tailgate Closer	(20 A)
22		IG HOLD2	15 A
23		Washer	(15 A)
24		–	(10 A)
25	–	–	–

Models without fuse label

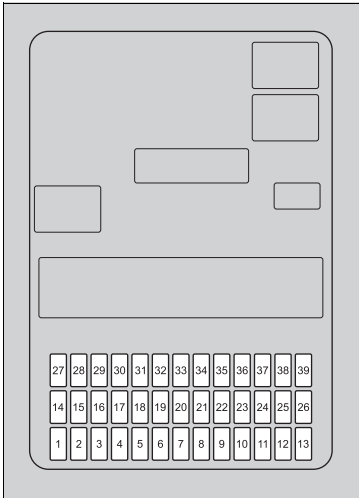
Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



1 Fuse Box

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Continued

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	LCM	5 A
5	Option	10 A
6	Option 2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	AIRCON	10 A
10	–	–
11	MON	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission	10 A
18	USB Charger	10 A
19	–	–
20	Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	10 A
25	–	–
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	–	–
31	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	20 A
32	–	–
33	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	20 A
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	–	–
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–

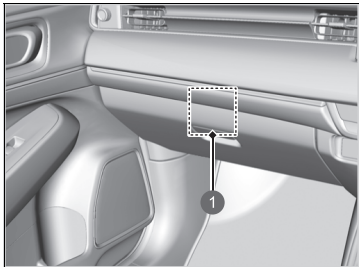
* Not available on all models

Right-hand drive type

■ Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

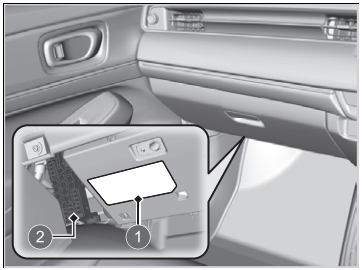
Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1

The fuses other than No.1 are under the dashboard.



❶ Fuse Label
❷ Fuse No. 2-25

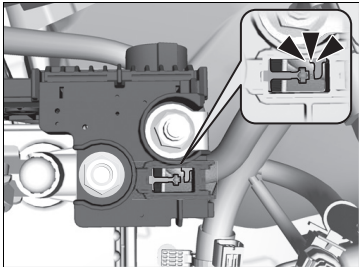
Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

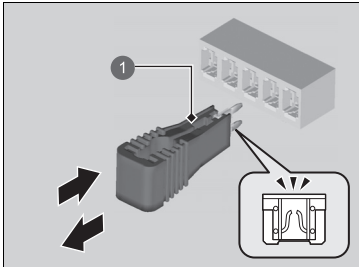
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	40 A
7		Fuse Box Option	(40 A)
8		Heater Motor	30 A
9		–	(40 A)
10		Rear Demister	30 A
11		–	(40 A)
12	–	–	–
13		Power Tailgate Motor*	(40 A)
14		SRS	10 A
15		IG HOLD1	10 A
16		IG HOLD3	10 A
17		IMG	10 A
18		–	(20 A)
19	–	–	–
20	–	–	–
21		Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
22		IG HOLD2	15 A
23		Washer	(15 A)
24		–	(10 A)
25	–	–	–

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the cover on the ⊕ terminal.
3. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
4. Remove the fuse box cover.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

1 Fuse Puller

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.
Fuse Locations P. 643

Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the cover of the engine compartment fuse box A.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ **Flatbed equipment**
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ **Wheel lift equipment**
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

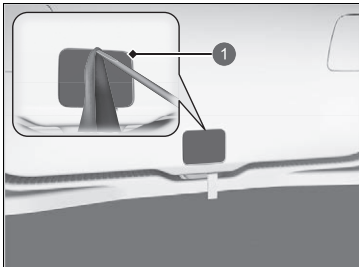
NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 510

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Cover

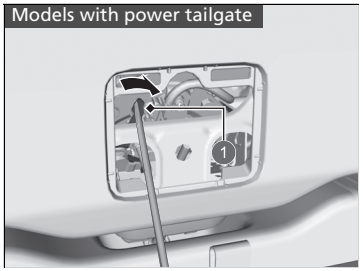
1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

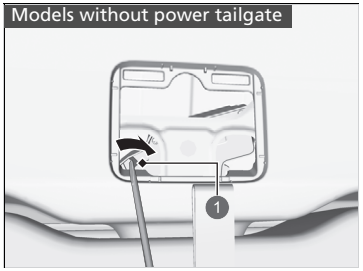
When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Models with power tailgate



❶ Lever

Models without power tailgate



❶ Lever

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications..... 656
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number..... 660
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 661
Utility Compliance*
Environmental Protection Regulation....666
Open Source Licence*..... 667

* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	HR-V
Curb Weight	1,378 - 1,382 kg[*1] 1,380 kg[*2] 1,383 kg[*3] 1,367 - 1,404 kg[*4] 1,381 kg[*5, *6, *7] 1,404 kg[*8] 1,393 kg[*9] 1,384 kg[*10] 1,395 - 1,404 kg[*11] 1,382 - 1,385 kg[*12]
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb[*7] See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb[*8] 1,870 kg[*1, *2] 1,830 kg[*3, *4, *5, *6, *9, *10, *11, *12]
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb[*7] See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb[*8]
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front 1,030 kg Rear 890 kg[*1, *2] 865 kg[*3, *4, *5, *6, *9, *10, *11, *12]

*1: Oceanian models
*2: Singaporean models
*3: Latin American models
*4: Thai models
*5: Vietnamese, Cambodian, and Laotian models
*6: Filipino models
*7: African models with left-hand drive type and Middle Eastern models
*8: African models with right-hand drive type, Bangladesh, Bhutanese, Bruneian, Nepalese, and Sri Lankan models
*9: Malaysian models
*10: Pakistani models
*11: Indonesian models
*12: Taiwanese models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm	
Displacement	1,498 cm^3	
Compression Ratio	13.5 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7C11H

■ Fuel

Type	**Except Thai, Pakistani, and Taiwanese models** Unleaded petrol, Research octane number 91 or higher **Thai models** Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), Research octane number 91 or higher **Pakistani models** EURO V/5 Unleaded petrol, manganese: maximum 2mg/Litre, research octane number 91 or higher **Taiwanese models** Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

■ 12-volt Battery

Capacity	32AH(5)/40AH(20)[*1] 27AH(5)/30AH(20)[*2]

*1: Oceanian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models
*2: Except Oceanian, Singaporean, and Taiwanese models

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W Amber (WY21W)* LED*
Back-Up Light(s)	16 W (W16W)* LED*
Rear Fog Light*	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Front Map Lights	LED
Ceiling Light*	LED
Rear Map Lights*	LED
Ambient Light	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2.3 W
Centre Pocket Lights	LED
Luggage Area Lights	LED

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)*1 HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)*2
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g*1 395 - 445 g*2

*1: Except Singaporean and Oceanian models
*2: Singaporean and Oceanian models

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	1.8 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Models with gasoline particulate filter Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C5 0W-20 Models without gasoline particulate filter Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 API service SN or higher grade 0W-20	
Capacity	Change	3.1 L
	Change including filter	3.3 L

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 554

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	4.22 L (change including the remaining 0.45 L in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J*2 18 x 7 1/2J*3

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
*2: Models with 17 inch wheel
*3: Models with 18 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Oceanian models

Length		4,345 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Singaporean models

Length		4,355 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Latin American models

Length		4,361 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,548 mm
	Rear	1,553 mm

Thai models

Length		4,347 mm*1 4,385 mm*2
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm*1 1,535 mm*2
	Rear	1,550 mm*1 1,540 mm*2

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel

Indonesian models

Length		4,347 mm*1 4,385 mm*2
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

*1: Models without side curtain airbags
*2: Models with side curtain airbags

Vietnamese, Cambodian, and Laotian models

Length		4,385 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Filipino models

Length		4,388 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,537 mm
	Rear	1,543 mm

African models with left-hand drive type and Middle Eastern models

Length		4,398 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,581 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

African models with right-hand drive type, Bangladesh, Bhutanese, Bruneian, Nepalese, and Sri Lankan models

Length		4,398 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Malaysian models

Length		4,385 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,590 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,535 mm
	Rear	1,540 mm

Pakistani models

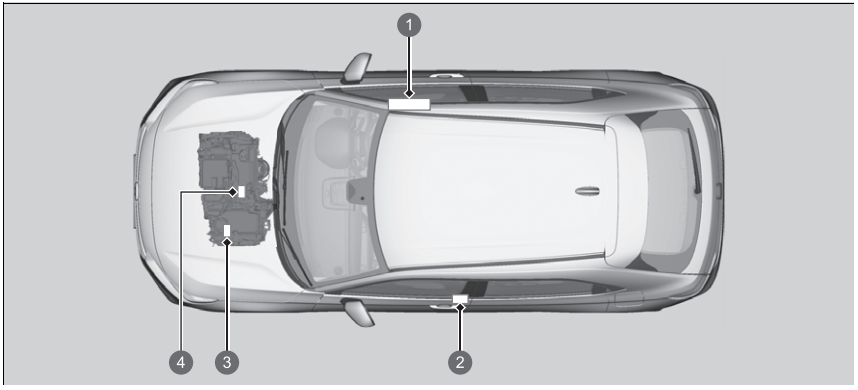
Length		4,361 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,591 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,537 mm
	Rear	1,543 mm

Taiwanese models

Length		4,345 mm
Width		1,790 mm
Height		1,580 mm
Wheelbase		2,610 mm
Track	Front	1,545 mm
	Rear	1,550 mm

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

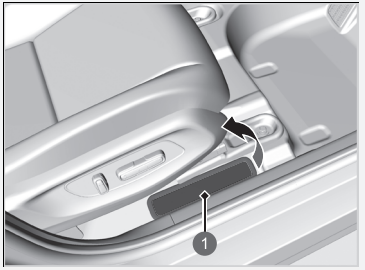
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



1. Vehicle Identification Number
2. Certification Label*/Certification Plate*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Chassis Number*
3. Transmission Number
   Motor Number
4. Engine Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



1. Cover

* Not available on all models

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Models under the FCC regulations

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

AS required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

Taiwanese models

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

* Not available on all models

Continued

	Keyless Access System	
	BCM	FOB
Jamaican models	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "41580430" on the product	This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – "TP_4 " on the product
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440
Thai models		
Indonesian models	—	The web-address of QR Code is: *https://sertifikasi.postel.go.id/valid?section=4f94ec92c3a7c44073065befddad1b22S3r107620S3r07b0b99ff69237359f67408f220423ba*

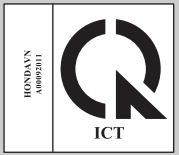
	Keyless Access System	
	BCM	FOB
Moroccan models	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC MR00025015ANRT2020 23/07/2020	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC MR 24116 ANRT 2020 26/05/2020
Filipino models	No.ESD-RCE-2023291 	No.ESD-RCE-2022596C
Vietnamese models		

Bermuda and Grand Cayman models

Keyless Access System	
BCM	FOB
http://continental-homologation.com/honda	*http://continental-homologation.com/honda*
CE	CE
Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *https://continental-homologation.com/honda* Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 125KHz Maximum transmitted output: 10mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium	Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *https://continental-homologation.com/honda* Instructions and safety information: Short range device for remote control Postal address: Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Manufacturer name: Continental Automotive GmbH Frequency band: 433.92MHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Postal address: Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium

Telematics Control Unit*	
Thai models	This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC) This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Wireless Charger	
Bahamas models	BH EVS Co.,Ltd. WC500HOCI21 This information is a product serial number of each module. FCC ID:2A6WXWC500HOTL20

Telematics Control Unit	Wireless Charger
Vietnamese models	

* Not available on all models

Environmental Protection Regulation

Taiwanese models

NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.

■ Close proximity exhaust noise test

- Requirements for testing: Since the engine generally does not run while the vehicle is stationary, you must wait until the high-voltage battery is depleted by at least 70% so that the engine will automatically start and continue running to supply electricity to the battery. During this charging period, it is possible to test the exhaust noise. Before testing, make sure that all the electrical components (climate control system, lights, etc.) are turned off.
- Depleting the high-voltage battery: To accelerate battery depletion, set the power system to READY and then turn on all the electrical components.

 * Not available on all models

■ **TCU Open Source Licence**

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

Numbers

12-Volt Battery 583
  Charging System Indicator 114, 636
  Maintenance
    (Checking the 12-Volt Battery) 583

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 518
Accessories and Modifications 600
Accessory Power Sockets 256
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 397
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with
  Low Speed Follow 122, 461
Adaptive Driving Beam 218
Adding
  Engine Coolant 558
  Engine Oil 557
  Washer 565
Additives, Engine Oil 554
Adjustable Speed Limiter 403
  Indicator 122
Adjusting
  Armrest 244
  Front Seats 232
  Head Restraints Positions 241
  Headlights 214
  Mirrors 228
  Steering Wheel 227
Adjusting the Sound 293
Agile Handling Assist 418
Air Conditioning System
  (Climate Control System) 264
  Air Outlet 270
  Changing the Mode 266
  Defrosting the Windscreen and
    Windows 267
  Dust and Pollen Filter 589
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 266
  Sensor 271
  Synchronization Mode 269
  Using Automatic Climate Control 264
Air Outlet 270
Air Pressure 658
Airbags 60
  After a Collision 62
  Airbag Care 70
  Event Data Recorder 1
  Front Airbags (SRS) 62
  Indicator 69, 115
  Sensors 60
  Side Airbags 65
  Side Curtain Airbags 67
AM/FM Radio 300
Ambient Meter 129
Anchorage Points 59
Android Auto™ 326
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 518
  Indicator 115
Apple CarPlay 319
Armrest 244
Audio 139
Audio Remote Controls 280
Audio System 274
  Adjusting the Sound 293
  AM/FM Radio 300
  Android Auto™ 326
  App Shortcut Function 283
  Apple CarPlay 319
  Audio Remote Controls 280
  Audio System Function 277
  Audio/Information Screen 282
  Basic Operation 277
  Bluetooth® Audio 315
  Clock Setup 290
  DAB 305
  Display Setup 294
  Error Messages 363
  FLAC/PCM/WAVE 311
  General Information 364
  How to Update 295
  How to Update Wirelessly 298
  How to Update with a USB Device 299
  iPod 308
  Limitations for Manual Operation 289
  MP3/WMA/AAC 311
  Radio Data System (RDS) 303
  Selecting an Audio Source 288
  Start Up 276
  Status Area 288
  System Updates 295
  System Updates Settings 296
  USB Flash Drives 311, 364

USB Ports 275, 279
Wallpaper Setup 291
Wi-Fi Connection 318
Audio/Information Screen 282
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 183
Auto High-Beam 215
Automatic Brake Hold 514
Indicator 112, 514
Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator 515
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function 231
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 223
Average Fuel Economy 136
Average Speed 138

B

Battery
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 114, 636
High Voltage 14, 429
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 628
Belts (Seat) 47
Beverage Holders 249
Blind Spot Information System 424
***Bluetooth*® Audio** 315
Booster Seats (For Children) 103
Brake Light Display 141
Brake Light Status 141
Brake System 510
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 518
Automatic Brake Hold 514
Brake Assist System 519
Fluid 564
Foot Brake 513
Indicator 110, 111, 112, 638, 640
Parking Brake 510
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 226
Bulb Replacement 566
Active Cornering Lights 566
Back-Up Lights 569, 570
Brake Lights 567, 570
Daytime Running Lights 566
Front Fog Lights 566
Front Turn Signal Lights 566
Headlights 566
High-Mount Brake Light 570
Position Lights 566
Rear Licence Plate Light 570
Rear Turn Signal Lights 567, 570
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 566
Taillights 569, 570
Vanity Mirror Lights 571
Bulb Specifications 657

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 105
Carrying Luggage 377, 379
Certification Label 660
Changing Bulbs 566
Child Restraint System 71
Booster Seats 103
Child Restraint System for Infants 75
Child Restraint System for Small Children 76
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 98
Larger Children 102
Rear-facing Child Restraint System 75
Selecting a Child Restraint System 77
Using a Tether 100
Child Safety 71
Childproof Door Locks 182
Childproof Door Locks 182
Cleaning the Exterior 596
Cleaning the Interior 592
Climate Control System 264
Air Outlet 270
Changing the Mode 264
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 267
Dust and Pollen Filter 589
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 266
Sensors 271
Synchronization Mode 269
Using Automatic Climate Control 264
Clock 130, 162
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 433
Coat Hooks 250

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 433
Console Box 248
Controls 161
Creeping 391
Cross Traffic Monitor 529
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist 130
Customize Display 145
Customized Features 330, 337

D

DAB 305
Daytime Running Lights 211
Dead Battery 628
Deceleration Paddle Selector 394
Defaulting All the Settings 343
Deflation Warning System 422
  Calibration 422
  Indicator 117, 641
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 267
Demister 225
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 661
Dimming
  Headlights 205
  Rearview Mirror 228
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 556
Display Audio 276
Display Setup 294
Door Mirrors 229
Doors 165
  Auto Door Locking 183
  Auto Door Unlocking 183
  Door and Tailgate Open Message 46
  Keys 165
  Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 179
  Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 168
  Lockout Prevention System 177
Drive Mode Switch 398
Driver Information Interface 131
  Switching the Display 131
Driving 375
  Braking 510
  Shifting 392
  Transmission 391
Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle 389
Dust and Pollen Filter 589

E

e:HEV 13
Elapsed Time 138
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
  Indicator 116, 639
Emergency Stop Signal 520
Emergency Towing 651
Engine
  If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 628
  Number 660
  Oil 554
  Switch Buzzer 203, 204
Engine Coolant 558
  Adding to the Reserve Tank 559
  Overheating 632
Engine Oil 554
  Adding 557
  Checking 556
  Pressure Low Warning 635
  Recommended Engine Oil 554, 657
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 116, 639
EV Indicator 113
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 105
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 596
Exterior Mirrors 229

F

Features 273
Filter
  Dust and Pollen 589
Flat Tyre 605
Fluids
  Brake 564
  Engine Coolant 558
  Windscreen Washer 565

FM/AM Radio 300
Folding Down the Rear Seats 236
Foot Brake 513
Front Airbags (SRS) 62
Front Fog Light Indicator 119
Front Seat Heaters 261
Front Seats 232
  Adjusting 233
Front Wide View Camera 507
Fuel 31, 535
  Economy and CO_2 Emissions 539
  Gauge 128
  Instant Fuel Economy 136
  Low Fuel Indicator 115
  Range 136
  Recommendation 31, 535
  Refueling 31, 535
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 539
Fuel Fill Cap 31, 537
Fuel Fill Door 31, 537
Fuses 643
  Inspecting and Changing 650
  Locations 643, 645, 647, 649

G

Gauge Only 133
Gauges 128
Glass (care) 593, 597
Glove Box 248

H

Hands-Free Telephone System 344
  Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls 354
  Automatic Transferring 355
  Favourite Contacts 356
  HFT Buttons 344
  HFT Menus 348
  HFT Status Display 346
  Limitations for Manual Operation 347
  Making a Call 359
  Options During a Call 362
  Phone Settings Screen 350
  Phone Setup 351
  Receiving a Call 361
  Ringtone 355
Hazard Warning Button 6, 7
Head Restraints Positions 241
Headlights 205
  Adaptive Driving Beam 218
  Adjuster 214
  Aiming 566
  Auto High-Beam 215
  Dimming 205
  Operating 205
Heated Door Mirror Button 225
Heated Steering Wheel 260
Heaters (Front Seat) 261
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) 344
High Beam Indicator 119
High Voltage Battery 429
High Voltage System Coolant 561
Hill Descent Control System 401
  Indicator 121
Hill Start Assist System 388
Honda SENSING 32, 430
Hybrid Vehicle
  e:HEV 13
Hydrophilic Mirror 599

I

Identification Numbers 660
  Engine, Motor and Transmission 660
  Vehicle Identification 660
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 628
Illumination Control 226
Immobilizer System 195
  Indicator 120
Indicators 108
  12-Volt Battery Charging System 114, 636
  ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 115
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber) 122
  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green) 122
  Adaptive Driving Beam 119
  Adjustable Speed Limiter 122
  Auto High-Beam 119
  Automatic Brake Hold 112, 514
  Automatic Brake Hold System 112, 515

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 124
Deceleration Paddle Selector 114
ECON Mode 120
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 116, 639
EV 113
Front Fog Light 119
High Beam 119
Hill Descent Control System 121
Immobilizer System 120
Intelligent Speed Limiter (White/Green) 122
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 123
Lights On 119
Low Fuel 115
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 117, 641
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 118, 642
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 113, 637
NORMAL Mode 120
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 112, 640
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 110, 111, 638, 640
Parking Sensor 121
Power System 113
Ready 113
Rear Fog Light 119
Road Departure Mitigation 124
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF 124
Safety Support (Amber) 125
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 127
Seat Belt Reminder 49, 115
Security System Alarm 120
Shift Position 114
SPORT Mode 120
Supplemental Restraint System 69, 115
System Message Indicator 121
Transmission System 114
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 119
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 116, 417
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 116, 416
Information 145, 655
Instant Fuel Economy 136
Instrument Panel 107
Brightness Control 226
Intelligent Speed Limiter 409
Indicator 122
Interior Convenience Items 245
Interior Lights 245
Interior Rearview Mirror 228
iPhone 364
iPod 308, 364
IR Cut Glass 593

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 623
Jacking Points 620
Jump Starting 628

K

Key Number Tag 166
Keyless Lockout Prevention 177
Keys 165
Lockout Prevention 177
Number Tag 166
Rear Door Won't Open 182
Remote Transmitter 174
Types and Functions 165
Kickdown 391

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 478
Indicator (Amber) 123
Indicator (White/Green) 123
Lead Car Departure Notification System 497
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto 368
Lights 205, 566
Active Cornering Lights 212
Adaptive Driving Beam 218
Auto High-Beam 215
Bulb Replacement 566
Daytime Running Lights 211
Fog Light 209
Front Fog Lights 209
High Beam Indicator Light 119
Interior 245
Light Switches 205

Lights On Indicator 119
Luggage Area Lights 247
Limited Stopping Power/Reduced Stopping Power Warning 636
Load Limits 379
Locking/Unlocking 165
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 183
Childproof Door Locks 182
From Inside 179
From Outside 168
Keys 165
Using a Key 176
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 168
Lockout Prevention System 177
Low Battery Charge 636
Low Fuel Indicator 115
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 167
Low Oil Pressure Warning 635
Low Speed Braking Control 447
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 117, 641
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 118, 642
Lower Anchorages 94
Lubricant Specifications Chart 657
Luggage (Load Limit) 379
Luggage Area Cover 253
Luggage Hook 251

M

Maintenance 541
12-Volt Battery 583
Brake Fluid 564
Cleaning 592
Climate Control 588
Engine Coolant 558
High Voltage System Coolant 561
Oil 556
Precautions 542
Radiator 560
Remote Transmitter 586
Replacing Light Bulbs 566
Safety 543
Transmission Fluid 563
Tyres 577
Under the Bonnet 551
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 113, 637
Map Light Switches 246
Maximum Permissible Weight 379, 656
Meters, Gauges 128
Mirrors 228
Adjusting 228
Door 229
Interior Rearview 228
Modifications (and Accessories) 600
MP3/WMA/AAC 311
Multi-View Rear Camera 533

N

Navigation 139
Numbers (Identification) 660

O

Odometer 129
Off-road Guidelines 381
Oil (Engine) 554
Adding 557
Checking 556
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 635
Recommended Engine Oil 554
Viscosity 554, 657
Open Source Licences 367, 667
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 552
Power Windows 198
Tailgate 184
Other Interior Convenience Items 255
Outside Temperature Display 129
Overheating 632

P

Parking Brake 510
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 112, 640
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 110, 111, 638, 640
Parking Sensor System 523

Passing Indicators 205
Petrol 31, 535
Economy and CO_2 Emissions 539
Gauge 128
Information 535
Instant Fuel Economy 136
Low Fuel Indicator 115
Recommendation 31, 535
Refueling 31, 535
Phone 139
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 315
POWER Button 202
Power Flow/Engine Status Display/High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 134
Power System Indicator 113
Power System Won't Start 624
Power Windows 198
Power/Charge 133
POWER/CHARGE Gauge 128
Precautions While Driving 389
Rain 390
Pregnant Women 57
Puncture (Tyre) 605

R

Radiator 560
Radio (AM/FM) 300
Radio Data System (RDS) 303
Range 136
Range / Fuel / Trip Meter 135
RDS (Radio Data System) 303
Ready Indicator 113
Rear Demister 225
Rear Fog Light Indicator 119
Rear Seat Reminder 239
Rear Seats 236
Rearview Mirror 228
Refuel Recommend 374
Refueling 31, 535
Fuel Gauge 128
Low Fuel Indicator 115
Petrol 31, 535, 656
Regulations 661, 666
Remote Transmitter 174
Replacement
Bulbs 566
Front Wiper Blade Rubber 572
Fuses 643, 645, 647, 649
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 575
Remote Battery 586
Resetting a Trip Meter 136
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror 230
Road Departure Mitigation 453
On and Off 456

S

Safe Driving 41
Safety Labels 106
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 143
Indicator (Amber) 125, 126, 127
Indicator (Green/Grey) 127
Seat Belts 47, 143
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 54
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 51
Checking 58
Fastening 52
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 98
Pregnant Women 57
Reminder 49
Warning Indicator 49, 115
Seat Heaters 261
Seats 232
Adjusting 232
Front Seats 232
Rear Seats 236
Seat Heaters 261
Security System 195
Immobilizer System Indicator 120
Security System Alarm Indicator 120
Select Lever 28, 392
Selecting a Child Restraint System 77
Selecting the Desired Air Outlet 270
Setting the Clock 162
Settings 146
Shift Lever 28, 392
Operation 28, 393
Releasing 631
Won't Move 631

Shifting (Transmission) 28, 392
Shoulder Anchorage 54
Side Airbags 65
Side Curtain Airbags 67
Sonar Sensors 509
Spark Plugs 656
Specifications 656
Specified Fuel 31, 535, 656
Speed Alarm 140
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 403
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 409
Speed/Time/Trip Meter 137
Speedometer 128
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 62
Steering Wheel 227
  Adjusting 227
Stopping 521
Storage Items 248
Sun Visor 255
Super UV Cut Glass 593
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 62
Switches
 (Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 7, 8, 202
Switching the Display 131
System Updates 295

T

Tailgate 184
Temperature
  Outside Temperature Display 129
Temperature Sensor 129
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 605
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 605
Tie-down Anchorages 251
Time (Setting) 162
Tools 604
Towing a Trailer 380
Towing Your Vehicle
  Emergency 651
Traffic Jam Assist 488
Traffic Sign Recognition System 130, 502
Transmission 391, 392
  Creeping 391
  Fluid 563
  Kickdown 391
  Number 660
  Operating the Shift Lever 28, 392
  Shift Lever Does Not Move 631
Trip Meter 136, 138
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 605
Troubleshooting 603
  Blown Fuse 643, 645, 647, 649
  Brake Pedal Vibrates 36
  Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 37
  Emergency Towing 651
  Noise When Braking 38
  Overheating 632
  Power System Won't Start 624
  Rear Door Won't Open 182
  Shift Lever Won't Move 631
  Warning Indicators 108
Turn signals
  Indicators (Instrument Panel) 119
Turning on the Power 383
  Does Not Activate 624
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System
 (TPMS) 419
  Calibration 419
  Indicator 118, 642
Tyres 577
  Air Pressure 658
  Checking and Maintaining 577
  Inspection 577
  Rotation 580
  Tyre Chains 582
  Wear Indicators 578
  Winter 582

U

Unlocking the Doors 168
Unlocking the Front Doors from
 the Inside 22
USB Flash Drives 311, 364
USB Ports 275, 279
Utility Compliance 666

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 660

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 416
OFF Button 417
OFF Indicator 116
System Indicator 116
Viscosity (Oil) 554, 657
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 416

W

Wallpaper 291
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 635
Warning Labels 106
Water Repellent Glass 597
Watts 657
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 578
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 623
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate 652
Wi-Fi Connection 318
Window Washers 222
Adding/Refilling Fluid 565
Switch 222
Windows (Opening and Closing) 198
Windscreen 222
Cleaning 593, 597
Defrosting/Defogging 225, 267
Washer Fluid 565
Wiper Blades 572
Wipers and Washers 222
Winter Tyres 582
Tyre Chains 582
Wipers and Washers 222
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 223
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 572
Front 222
Rear 224
Wireless Charger 257
WMA 311
Worn Tyres 577